

math

Joey Yu Hsu

2024-03-29



# Contents

<b>index</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>I by discipline</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1 mathematics</b>	<b>15</b>
1.1 tool . . . . .	15
1.2 discipline . . . . .	15
<b>2 physics</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1 discipline . . . . .	17
<b>3 plot</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>4 programming language</b>	<b>21</b>
4.1 discipline . . . . .	21
4.2 learning map . . . . .	21
<b>5 machine learning</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>II by date</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>6 A Minimal Book Example</b>	<b>27</b>
6.1 About . . . . .	27
6.1.1 Usage . . . . .	27
6.1.2 Render book . . . . .	27
6.1.3 Preview book . . . . .	27
6.2 Hello bookdown . . . . .	28
6.2.1 A section . . . . .	28
An unnumbered section . . . . .	28
6.3 Cross-references . . . . .	28
6.3.1 Chapters and sub-chapters . . . . .	28
6.3.2 Captioned figures and tables . . . . .	28
6.4 Parts . . . . .	30
6.5 Footnotes and citations . . . . .	30
6.5.1 Footnotes . . . . .	30
6.5.2 Citations . . . . .	30
6.6 Blocks . . . . .	30
6.6.1 Equations . . . . .	30

6.6.2	Theorems and proofs . . . . .	30
6.6.3	Callout blocks . . . . .	31
6.7	Sharing your book . . . . .	31
6.7.1	Publishing . . . . .	31
6.7.2	404 pages . . . . .	31
6.7.3	Metadata for sharing . . . . .	31
<b>7</b>	<b>test</b>	<b>33</b>
7.1	RStudio . . . . .	33
7.1.1	writer options . . . . .	33
7.1.1.1	line wrapping . . . . .	33
7.1.1.2	ensuring the same markdown between source / visual mode . . . . .	33
7.1.2	Rtools . . . . .	33
7.1.3	addins . . . . .	34
7.1.4	Git . . . . .	34
7.2	RMarkdown . . . . .	34
7.2.1	Pandoc link . . . . .	34
7.2.2	URL . . . . .	34
7.2.3	arrow . . . . .	35
7.2.4	superscript and subscript . . . . .	35
7.2.4.1	LaTeX . . . . .	35
7.2.5	equation . . . . .	35
7.2.5.1	proof QED . . . . .	35
7.2.6	image . . . . .	35
7.2.6.1	DiagrammeR / mermaid flowchart . . . . .	36
7.2.6.2	multiple images / figures in the same line . . . . .	36
7.2.6.3	figure size . . . . .	38
7.2.6.3.1	knitr . . . . .	40
7.2.6.3.2	out.width vs. fig.width . . . . .	41
7.2.6.4	dynamic knitr plot width and height . . . . .	43
7.2.6.5	web image in PDF . . . . .	43
7.2.6.6	SVG . . . . .	44
7.2.7	horizontal rule . . . . .	46
7.2.8	footnote . . . . .	46
7.2.9	hyperlink . . . . .	46
7.2.10	code chunk . . . . .	46
7.2.10.1	code folding . . . . .	46
7.2.11	xaringan . . . . .	46
7.3	Bookdown . . . . .	47
7.3.1	system locale . . . . .	47
7.3.2	render_book() . . . . .	47
7.3.3	serve_book() . . . . .	47
7.3.4	LaTeX . . . . .	47
7.3.4.1	hyperlink, URL, href . . . . .	47
7.3.4.2	ugly mathptmx $\sum$ . . . . .	47
7.3.4.3	LaTeX package in HTML document . . . . .	48
7.3.5	depth of table of contents toc_depth . . . . .	48
7.3.6	multi-column layout / two columns . . . . .	48
7.3.6.1	for both HTML and PDF . . . . .	49
7.3.6.2	multi-column fig.cap must use fig.pos="H" . . . . .	50
7.3.6.3	caption above figure . . . . .	51
7.3.6.4	for only HTML . . . . .	51

7.3.6.4.1	CSS flex . . . . .	51
7.3.6.4.2	CSS grid . . . . .	52
7.4	conditional block/chunk for either HTML or PDF, and Chinese issue . . . . .	53
7.5	video embedding . . . . .	53
7.5.1	timestamp . . . . .	54
7.6	equation term coloring . . . . .	54
7.6.1	font color . . . . .	54
7.6.2	background color . . . . .	55
7.7	link and reference . . . . .	56
7.8	number and reference equations . . . . .	57
7.9	footnote . . . . .	57
7.10	citation . . . . .	57
7.10.1	citation in <code>fig.cap</code> . . . . .	58
7.10.2	backreference . . . . .	58
7.11	environment for definition, theorem, proof . . . . .	58
7.12	slide or presentation . . . . .	59
7.12.1	Xaringan and Infinite Moon Reader . . . . .	59
7.12.2	ioslides . . . . .	59
7.12.3	PowerPoint . . . . .	61
<b>8</b>	<b>test2</b>	<b>63</b>
8.1	verbatim . . . . .	63
<b>9</b>	<b>partition</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>equivalence class</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>equivalence relation</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Python</b>	<b>71</b>
12.1	using Python in R / RMarkdown . . . . .	71
12.2	SoloLearn . . . . .	73
12.3	list comprehension . . . . .	73
12.4	functional programming . . . . .	73
12.5	object-oriented programming = OOP . . . . .	74
<b>13</b>	<b>TikZ</b>	<b>75</b>
13.1	2D . . . . .	76
13.2	3D . . . . .	84
13.3	plots of functions . . . . .	87
13.4	PGFplots . . . . .	88
13.4.1	the axis environments . . . . .	88
13.4.2	axis descriptions . . . . .	89
13.4.2.1	placement of axis descriptions . . . . .	89
13.4.2.1.1	coordinate system <code>axis description cs</code> . . . . .	89
13.4.2.1.2	legend . . . . .	91
13.4.2.1.3	tick option . . . . .	91
13.4.3	<code>declare function</code> . . . . .	91
13.4.3.1	<code>pgfmathparse</code> . . . . .	92
13.4.3.2	<code>pgfmathdeclarefunction</code> . . . . .	92
13.4.4	<code> -</code> and <code>- </code> in TikZ . . . . .	94
13.4.5	<code>pgfplotsinvokeforeach</code> . . . . .	94
13.4.6	interpolation dashed lines . . . . .	95

13.4.7 Zewbie . . . . .	95
13.4.7.1 coordinate axis/axes fine-tuing . . . . .	96
13.4.7.1.1 range . . . . .	96
13.4.7.1.2 scaling . . . . .	96
13.4.7.1.3 direction vector . . . . .	97
13.4.7.1.4 axis style . . . . .	98
13.4.7.1.5 axis discontinuity . . . . .	100
13.4.7.1.6 tick . . . . .	101
13.4.7.2 addplot+ . . . . .	104
13.4.7.3 point . . . . .	104
13.4.7.4 line . . . . .	109
13.4.7.5 plane . . . . .	111
13.4.7.6 polar coordinate . . . . .	112
13.4.8 Arnav Bandekar: Using pgfplots to make economic graphs in LaTeX . . . . .	113
13.4.9 PGFplots gallery . . . . .	113
13.5 TikZplotLib / tikzplotlib . . . . .	114
13.6 animation . . . . .	117
<b>14 xy-pic</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>15 statistics</b>	<b>121</b>
<b>16 covariance matrix</b>	<b>123</b>
16.1 covariance matrix . . . . .	123
16.1.1 calculation . . . . .	123
16.1.2 $V[\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] = V[\mathbf{X}]$ . . . . .	123
16.1.3 $V[A\mathbf{X}] = A V[\mathbf{X}] A^T$ . . . . .	124
16.1.4 $V[A\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] = A V[\mathbf{X}] A^T$ . . . . .	124
<b>17 Gosper algorithm</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>18 Lorentz transformation</b>	<b>127</b>
18.1 Einstein . . . . .	127
18.2 Bondi $k$ -calculus . . . . .	127
18.3 wordline in Minkowski space . . . . .	127
18.3.1 Wick rotation . . . . .	127
18.3.1.1 Osterwalder-Schrader reconstruction theorem . . . . .	127
<b>19 R</b>	<b>129</b>
19.1 TonyKuoYJ . . . . .	129
19.1.1 quick intro . . . . .	129
19.1.1.1 function . . . . .	130
19.1.2 R style . . . . .	130
19.1.3 data workflow or forward pipe . . . . .	130
19.1.3.1 $\%>\%$ operator . . . . .	130
19.1.4 data processing with <code>dplyr</code> . . . . .	131
19.1.5 visualization statically with <code>ggplot2</code> . . . . .	134
19.1.6 loop . . . . .	140
19.1.7 variable type . . . . .	141
19.1.7.1 date . . . . .	141
19.1.7.2 time . . . . .	141
19.1.7.3 quotient $\%/\%$ operator . . . . .	142
19.1.8 data type . . . . .	142

19.1.8.1	vector . . . . .	142
19.1.8.1.1	logic . . . . .	143
19.1.8.1.2	rep repeat . . . . .	143
19.1.8.1.3	seq sequence . . . . .	143
19.1.8.2	factor . . . . .	144
19.1.8.3	matrix . . . . .	144
19.1.8.4	data frame . . . . .	145
19.1.8.4.1	selecting variable or column . . . . .	146
19.1.8.4.2	filtering observation or row . . . . .	146
19.1.8.4.3	check mixed data type . . . . .	147
19.2	W3School . . . . .	147
19.2.1	same multiple variable . . . . .	147
19.2.2	legal variable name . . . . .	147
19.2.3	complex number . . . . .	148
19.2.4	escape character . . . . .	148
19.2.5	global assignment <<- . . . . .	148
19.2.6	data type . . . . .	148
19.2.6.1	array . . . . .	148
19.2.6.2	list . . . . .	149
19.3	Apan Liao . . . . .	149
19.3.1	data input . . . . .	149
19.3.2	descriptive statistics . . . . .	149
<b>20</b>	<b>Laplace transform</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>21</b>	<b>conic section</b>	<b>153</b>
21.1	Cartesian coordinate: focus, directrix, eccentricity . . . . .	154
21.2	two-definition equivalence for ellipse and hyperbola . . . . .	156
21.2.1	first definition for conic sections including ellipses and hyperbolas . . . . .	156
21.2.2	second definition for ellipses and hyperbolas . . . . .	157
21.2.3	eccentricity and its equivalent representation . . . . .	160
21.3	Cartesian coordinate: standard form / standard equation . . . . .	160
21.4	parametric equation . . . . .	162
21.5	polar coordinate . . . . .	162
21.6	Cartesian coordinate: general form / quadratic equation . . . . .	166
21.7	homogeneous coordinate . . . . .	166
<b>22</b>	<b>distance from a point to a line</b>	<b>169</b>
22.1	by shortest $\overline{PP'}$ . . . . .	169
22.2	by perpendicular foot . . . . .	170
22.3	by normal vector . . . . .	171
22.4	by Cauchy inequality . . . . .	172
<b>23</b>	<b>real symmetric matrix diagonalizable</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>24</b>	<b>tangent half-angle formula</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>25</b>	<b>homogeneous coordinate</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>26</b>	<b>Archimedean property</b>	<b>181</b>
26.1	integer Archimedean property . . . . .	181
26.2	rational Archimedean property . . . . .	181
26.3	real Archimedean property . . . . .	181

<b>27 Matplotlib / matplotlib</b>	<b>183</b>
27.1 Timothy H. Wu . . . . .	183
27.1.1 functional API . . . . .	183
27.1.2 object-oriented API . . . . .	187
27.1.2.1 Configure the figure size and DPI . . . . .	188
27.1.2.2 subplot . . . . .	190
27.1.2.3 color and linestyle . . . . .	191
27.1.2.4 other inputs . . . . .	191
27.1.2.5 legend . . . . .	192
27.1.2.6 customize style . . . . .	192
27.1.2.7 save to file . . . . .	192
27.1.3 Seaborn . . . . .	193
27.1.3.1 basic . . . . .	195
27.1.3.2 data frame . . . . .	195
27.1.3.3 axis-level plot and figure-level plot . . . . .	197
27.1.3.4 accessing figure and axes objects . . . . .	200
27.1.3.5 distribution plot . . . . .	200
27.1.3.5.1 histogram . . . . .	200
27.1.3.5.2 ECDF = empirical cumulative distribution function . . . . .	201
27.1.3.5.3 KDE = kernel density estimation . . . . .	202
27.1.3.6 categorical plot . . . . .	205
27.1.3.7 joint plot . . . . .	207
27.1.3.8 pair plot . . . . .	207
27.1.3.9 palette . . . . .	208
27.1.3.10 volcano plot . . . . .	209
27.1.3.11 heatmap . . . . .	209
27.2 export . . . . .	209
27.2.1 .svg . . . . .	209
27.2.2 .eps . . . . .	210
<b>28 survival analysis</b>	<b>211</b>
28.1 Python package <code>tableone</code> . . . . .	211
28.2 Python package <code>lifelines</code> . . . . .	211
<b>29 Manim</b>	<b>213</b>
29.1 VSCode extension: Manim Sideview . . . . .	213
29.2 installation . . . . .	213
29.2.1 Conda . . . . .	213
29.3 quickstart . . . . .	213
<b>30 ggplot2</b>	<b>215</b>
30.1 geom . . . . .	215
30.1.1 basic plot system decomposition . . . . .	220
30.2 statistic . . . . .	222
30.3 scale . . . . .	223
30.4 coordinate system . . . . .	224
30.5 facet . . . . .	225
30.6 jitter . . . . .	225
30.7 font . . . . .	225
<b>31 notational system for design</b>	<b>227</b>
31.1 graphic notation . . . . .	227

31.2 pre-experimental design . . . . .	227
31.2.1 one-shot case study . . . . .	228
31.2.2 one-group pretest-posttest design . . . . .	228
31.2.3 static-group comparison . . . . .	228
31.3 true experimental design . . . . .	231
31.3.1 posttest-only control group design . . . . .	231
31.3.2 pretest-posttest control group design . . . . .	232
31.3.3 Solomon four-group design . . . . .	232
31.4 quasi-experimental design . . . . .	232
31.5 correlational and ex post facto designs . . . . .	232
31.6 graphic notation, advanced . . . . .	232
<b>32 design of experiment</b> . . . . .	<b>235</b>
32.1 notational system for design <sup>[31]</sup> . . . . .	235
32.2 terminology . . . . .	235
32.2.1 replication vs. subsample . . . . .	236
32.2.2 replication vs. repeated measurements . . . . .	236
32.2.3 replication, replicate . . . . .	236
32.2.3.1 technical replicate, biological replicate . . . . .	236
32.2.4 Latin square design . . . . .	237
32.2.5 model assumption and experimental unit, measurement/observational unit . . . . .	238
32.3 experiment structure . . . . .	240
32.3.1 treatment structure . . . . .	240
32.3.2 design structure . . . . .	240
32.3.3 size of experimental unit . . . . .	240
32.4 approach to experimentation . . . . .	240
32.5 sample size estimation . . . . .	241
32.6 statistical analysis plan . . . . .	241
32.7 protocol . . . . .	241
32.8 DoE course with six sigma and Minitab . . . . .	241
32.8.1 evolution . . . . .	241
<b>33 quine</b> . . . . .	<b>243</b>
33.1 %r . . . . .	243
<b>34 quaternion</b> . . . . .	<b>245</b>
34.1 TaylorCatAlice . . . . .	245
34.1.1 complex / dionion / bionion . . . . .	245
34.1.2 trionion / triernion / triplex / ternion . . . . .	245
34.1.3 quaternion . . . . .	246
34.1.3.1 true origin of ( dot product & cross product ) / ( inner product & outer product ) . . . . .	248
34.1.3.2 commutativity vs. anticommutativity . . . . .	249
34.1.3.2.1 commutativity . . . . .	249
34.1.3.2.2 anticommutativity . . . . .	250
34.1.3.3 bracket . . . . .	250
34.1.3.3.1 self-invented bracket . . . . .	250
34.1.3.3.2 Poisson bracket . . . . .	250
34.1.3.3.3 Lagrange bracket . . . . .	250
34.1.3.3.4 Lie bracket . . . . .	250
34.1.3.4 triple product . . . . .	250
34.1.3.5 differential operator . . . . .	253

34.1.3.5.1	4-differential operator . . . . .	253
34.1.3.5.2	nabla . . . . .	254
34.1.3.5.3	Laplace operator . . . . .	254
34.1.3.5.4	d'Alembert operator . . . . .	254
34.1.3.6	electromagnetism . . . . .	254
34.1.3.6.1	4-potential . . . . .	254
34.1.3.6.2	Maxwell compromise for both quaternion and 3-vector . . . . .	256
34.1.3.7	Joule heat vs. Thomson heat (Kelvin heat?) . . . . .	257
34.1.3.7.1	thermoelectric effect . . . . .	257
34.1.3.8	source term . . . . .	257
34.1.4	quaternion group . . . . .	257
34.1.5	octonion . . . . .	258
34.2	3Blue1Brown . . . . .	258
34.2.1	Ben Eater . . . . .	258
34.2.2	3B1B . . . . .	258
34.2.3	Sutrabla . . . . .	258
34.3	CCJou: LA Revelation . . . . .	258
<b>35</b>	<b>DICOM</b>	<b>259</b>
35.1	Innolitics: DICOM Standard Browser . . . . .	259
35.2	David Clunie: Medical Image Format Site . . . . .	259
<b>36</b>	<b>tendon pathophysiology</b>	<b>261</b>
36.1	histology . . . . .	261
<b>37</b>	<b>group theory</b>	<b>263</b>
37.1	matrix group . . . . .	263
37.2	group definition and basic theorem . . . . .	263
37.3	complex group representation . . . . .	264
37.3.1	complex basis group . . . . .	264
37.3.2	$\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$ . . . . .	264
37.3.3	( determinant of complex group representation ) equivalent to ( squared modulus of complex number ) . . . . .	266
37.3.3.1	Lagrange identity . . . . .	266
37.3.4	Euler formula proved by complex group representation . . . . .	267
37.4	quaternion group representation . . . . .	268
37.4.1	$\mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C})$ . . . . .	268
37.4.1.1	Euler identity . . . . .	270
37.4.2	$\mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{4 \times 4}(\mathbb{R})$ . . . . .	272
<b>38</b>	<b>tensor</b>	<b>273</b>
38.1	Einstein summation convention . . . . .	273
38.1.1	dummy index . . . . .	273
38.1.2	free index . . . . .	273
<b>references</b>		<b>275</b>

# **index**

math on bookdown started on 2024/01/28



# Part I

## by discipline



# Chapter 1

## mathematics

### 1.1 tool

- formula typesetting
  - TeX
    - \* LaTeX
      - pdfTeX
      - XeTeX
      - editor/tool:
        - LyX
        - OverLeaf
        - MathPix Snip
        - Microsoft Office Word
          - WordTeX <https://tomwildenhain.com/wordtex/>
          - Pandoc dependent
          - <https://superuser.com/questions/1114697/select-a-different-math-font-in-microsoft-word>
          - [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jIX\\_pThh7z8](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jIX_pThh7z8)
        - Microsoft Office PowerPoint
          - IguanaTeX <https://www.jonathanleroux.org/software/iguanatex/>
      - MathML
      - MathJax: JavaScript
    - plot<sup>[3]</sup>
    - symbolic computing
      - Maple: by MapleSoft
      - Mathematica: by Wolfram
    - numeric computing
      - MatLab: by MathWorks

equivalence relation<sup>[11]</sup>

equivalence class<sup>[10]</sup>

partition<sup>[9]</sup>

### 1.2 discipline



# Chapter 2

## physics

### 2.1 discipline

- relativity
  - special relativity
    - \* Lorentz transformation<sup>[18]</sup>
  - general relativity
- analytic mechanics
  - Lagrangian mechanics
  - Hamiltonian mechanics
- electromagnetism
- quantum mechanics
- field theory



# Chapter 3

## plot

- LaTeX
    - [TikZ](#)<sup>[13]</sup>
      - \* <https://tikz.dev/>
      - \* TikZ-3Dplot
      - \* [PGFplots](#)<sup>[13.4]</sup>
        - <https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/>
        - <https://pgfplots.sourceforge.net/gallery.html>
        - <https://pgfplots.net/>
      - \* editor / export
        - <https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/660371706>
        - offline
          - [TikzEdt](#): WYSIWYG and live preview
          - [TikZiT](#)
        - online
          - OverLeaf
          - MathCha
          - GeoGebra Classic
        - Python
          - [TikZplotLib](#) / [tikzplotlib](#)<sup>[13.5]</sup>
            - matplotlib export to TikZ .tex
            - [PyPI](#)
            - [GitHub](#)
          - R
            - [TikZDevice](#) / [tikzDevice](#)
              - r chunk engine='tikz' knitr out.width=if (knitr:::is\_html\_output()) '100%'
              - [CRAN](#)
                - [reference manual](#)
                - vignette: [TikZDevice - LaTeX Graphics for R](#)
              - [GitHub](#)
  - \* [TikZ library](#)
- [xypic](#) = [xy-pic](#)<sup>[14]</sup>
- [OverLeaf](#)
- [MathCha](#)
- [GeoGebra](#)
  - [GeoGebra Classic](#): to export TikZ

- GeoGebra Calculator Suite
- Python
  - Matplotlib / matplotlib<sup>[27]</sup>
  - Seaborn / seaborn<sup>[27.1.3]</sup>
  - Plotly
  - Manim
- R
  - Modern Statistical Graphics
  - ggplot2<sup>[30]</sup>
    - \* Modern Statistical Graphics [section 5.1](#)
  - GraphViz .gv
  - Mermaid .mmd
    - \* **about**
    - \* JavaScript based diagramming and charting tool that renders Markdown-inspired text definitions to create and modify diagrams dynamically
  - Shiny
    - \* R Markdown Guide [section 5.1](#)
  - tool
    - \* Jamovi

neural network plot/draw <https://github.com/ashishpatel26/Tools-to-Design-or-Visualize-Architecture-of-Neural-Network>

# Chapter 4

## programming language

### 4.1 discipline

- [Python](#)<sup>[12]</sup>
- JavaScript
- SQL = structured query language
- [R](#)<sup>[19]</sup>
  - RMarkdown
    - \* Bookdown
  - knitr: engine
    - \* [TikZ](#)<sup>[13]</sup>
  - reticulate: Python
  - Jamovi
- C#
  - web
    - \* MVC
    - \* .NET
  - desktop
    - \* UWP = Universal Windows Platform
    - \* WPF = Windows Presentation Foundation
    - \* WinForms = Windows Forms
  - 3D/game
    - \* Unity

### 4.2 learning map

- [W3School](#)
- [SoloLearn](#)
- [Codecademy](#)



# Chapter 5

## machine learning



# **Part II**

## **by date**



# Chapter 6

## A Minimal Book Example

### 6.1 About

This is a *sample* book written in **Markdown**. You can use anything that Pandoc’s Markdown supports; for example, a math equation  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

#### 6.1.1 Usage

Each **bookdown** chapter is an .Rmd file, and each .Rmd file can contain one (and only one) chapter. A chapter *must* start with a first-level heading: # A good chapter, and can contain one (and only one) first-level heading.

Use second-level and higher headings within chapters like: ## A short section or ### An even shorter section.

The `index.Rmd` file is required, and is also your first book chapter. It will be the homepage when you render the book.

#### 6.1.2 Render book

You can render the HTML version of this example book without changing anything:

1. Find the **Build** pane in the RStudio IDE, and
2. Click on **Build Book**, then select your output format, or select “All formats” if you’d like to use multiple formats from the same book source files.

Or build the book from the R console:

```
bookdown::render_book()
```

To render this example to PDF as a `bookdown::pdf_book`, you’ll need to install XeLaTeX. You are recommended to install TinyTeX (which includes XeLaTeX): <https://yihui.org/tinytex/>.

#### 6.1.3 Preview book

As you work, you may start a local server to live preview this HTML book. This preview will update as you edit the book when you save individual .Rmd files. You can start the server in a work session by using the RStudio add-in “Preview book”, or from the R console:

```
bookdown::serve_book()
```

## 6.2 Hello bookdown

All chapters start with a first-level heading followed by your chapter title, like the line above. There should be only one first-level heading (#) per .Rmd file.

### 6.2.1 A section

All chapter sections start with a second-level (##) or higher heading followed by your section title, like the sections above and below here. You can have as many as you want within a chapter.

#### An unnumbered section

Chapters and sections are numbered by default. To un-number a heading, add a {.unnumbered} or the shorter {-} at the end of the heading, like in this section.

## 6.3 Cross-references

Cross-references make it easier for your readers to find and link to elements in your book.

### 6.3.1 Chapters and sub-chapters

There are two steps to cross-reference any heading:

1. Label the heading: # Hello world {#nice-label}.
  - Leave the label off if you like the automated heading generated based on your heading title: for example, # Hello world = # Hello world {#hello-world}.
  - To label an un-numbered heading, use: # Hello world {-#nice-label} or {# Hello world .unnumbered}.
2. Next, reference the labeled heading anywhere in the text using \@ref(nice-label); for example, please see Chapter 6.3.
  - If you prefer text as the link instead of a numbered reference use: [any text you want can go here](#).

### 6.3.2 Captioned figures and tables

Figures and tables *with captions* can also be cross-referenced from elsewhere in your book using \@ref(fig:chunk-label) and \@ref(tab:chunk-label), respectively.

See Figure 6.1.

```
par(mar = c(4, 4, .1, .1))
plot(pressure, type = 'b', pch = 19)
```

Don't miss Table 6.1.

```
knitr::kable(
  head(pressure, 10), caption = 'Here is a nice table!',
  booktabs = TRUE
)
```

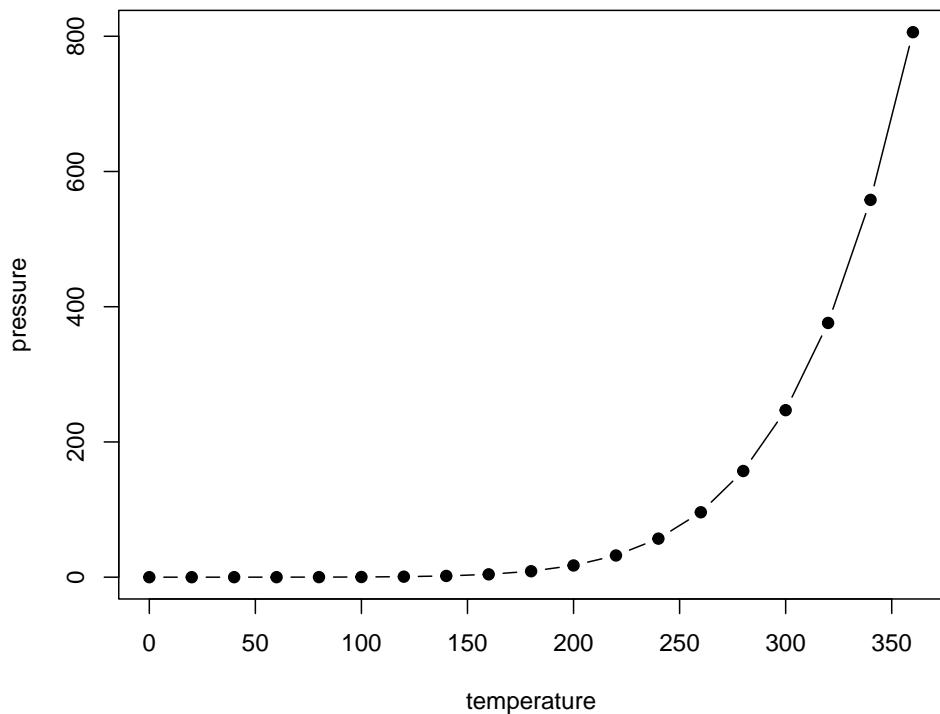


Figure 6.1: Here is a nice figure!

Table 6.1: Here is a nice table!

temperature	pressure
0	0.0002
20	0.0012
40	0.0060
60	0.0300
80	0.0900
100	0.2700
120	0.7500
140	1.8500
160	4.2000
180	8.8000

## 6.4 Parts

You can add parts to organize one or more book chapters together. Parts can be inserted at the top of an .Rmd file, before the first-level chapter heading in that same file.

Add a numbered part: `# (PART) Act one {-} (followed by # A chapter)`

Add an unnumbered part: `# (PART\*) Act one {-} (followed by # A chapter)`

Add an appendix as a special kind of un-numbered part: `# (APPENDIX) Other stuff {-} (followed by # A chapter)`. Chapters in an appendix are prepended with letters instead of numbers.

## 6.5 Footnotes and citations

### 6.5.1 Footnotes

Footnotes are put inside the square brackets after a caret `^[]`. Like this one <sup>1</sup>.

### 6.5.2 Citations

Reference items in your bibliography file(s) using `@key`.

For example, we are using the `bookdown` package<sup>1</sup> (check out the last code chunk in index.Rmd to see how this citation key was added) in this sample book, which was built on top of R Markdown and `knitr`<sup>2</sup> (this citation was added manually in an external file book.bib). Note that the `.bib` files need to be listed in the index.Rmd with the YAML `bibliography` key.

The RStudio Visual Markdown Editor can also make it easier to insert citations: <https://rstudio.github.io/visual-markdown-editing/#/citations>

## 6.6 Blocks

### 6.6.1 Equations

Here is an equation.

$$f(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad (6.1)$$

You may refer to using `\@ref(eq:binom)`, like see Equation (6.1).

### 6.6.2 Theorems and proofs

Labeled theorems can be referenced in text using `\@ref(thm:tri)`, for example, check out this smart theorem 6.1.

**Theorem 6.1.** *For a right triangle, if  $c$  denotes the length of the hypotenuse and  $a$  and  $b$  denote the lengths of the other two sides, we have*

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

Read more here <https://bookdown.org/yihui/bookdown/markdown-extensions-by-bookdown.html>.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is a footnote.

### 6.6.3 Callout blocks

The R Markdown Cookbook provides more help on how to use custom blocks to design your own callouts: <https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/custom-blocks.html>

## 6.7 Sharing your book

### 6.7.1 Publishing

HTML books can be published online, see: <https://bookdown.org/yihui/bookdown/publishing.html>

### 6.7.2 404 pages

By default, users will be directed to a 404 page if they try to access a webpage that cannot be found. If you'd like to customize your 404 page instead of using the default, you may add either a `_404.Rmd` or `_404.md` file to your project root and use code and/or Markdown syntax.

### 6.7.3 Metadata for sharing

Bookdown HTML books will provide HTML metadata for social sharing on platforms like Twitter, Facebook, and LinkedIn, using information you provide in the `index.Rmd` YAML. To setup, set the `url` for your book and the path to your `cover-image` file. Your book's `title` and `description` are also used.

This `gitbook` uses the same social sharing data across all chapters in your book- all links shared will look the same.

Specify your book's source repository on GitHub using the `edit` key under the configuration options in the `_output.yml` file, which allows users to suggest an edit by linking to a chapter's source file.

Read more about the features of this output format here:

<https://pkgs.rstudio.com/bookdown/reference/gitbook.html>

Or use:

```
?bookdown::gitbook
```



# Chapter 7

## test

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/verbatim-code-chunks.html>

### 7.1 RStudio

#### 7.1.1 writer options

<https://rstudio.github.io/visual-markdown-editing/markdown.html#writer-options>

##### 7.1.1.1 line wrapping

<https://rstudio.github.io/visual-markdown-editing/markdown.html#line-wrapping>

##### 7.1.1.2 ensuring the same markdown between source / visual mode

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/71775027/rstudio-switch-markdown-editing-mode-between-source-and-visual-changes-special>

##### canonical mode

<https://rstudio.github.io/visual-markdown-editing/markdown.html#canonical-mode>

```
---
```

```
title: "My Document"
editor_options:
  markdown:
    wrap: 72
    references:
      location: block
    canonical: true
---
```

#### 7.1.2 Rtools

Rtools43 for Windows <https://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/Rtools/rtools43/rtools.html>

### 7.1.3 addins

```
https://github.com/rstudio/addinexamples

if (!requireNamespace("devtools", quietly = TRUE))
  install.packages("devtools")

devtools::install_github("rstudio/htmltools")
devtools::install_github("rstudio/shiny")
devtools::install_github("rstudio/minUI")
```

### 7.1.4 Git

commit: filename or extension is too long

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/22575662/filename-too-long-in-git-for-windows>

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/55327408/how-to-fix-git-for-windows-error-could-not-lock-config-file-c-file-path-to-g>

## 7.2 RMarkdown

R Markdown 指南 <https://cosname.github.io/rmarkdown-guide/index.html>

<https://www.rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/02/rmarkdown-cheatsheet.pdf>

<https://slides.yihui.org/2020-taipei-saturday-rmarkdown.html#1>

### 7.2.1 Pandoc link

<https://pandoc.org/chunkedhtml-demo/8.16-links-1.html>

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/39281266/use-internal-links-in-rmarkdown-html-output>

<https://community.rstudio.com/t/how-to-hyperlink-between-different-rmd-files-in-rmarkdown/62289>

### 7.2.2 URL

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/29787850/how-do-i-add-a-url-to-r-markdown>

[I'm an inline-style link] (<https://www.google.com>)

[I'm an inline-style link with title] (<https://www.google.com> "Google's Homepage")

[I'm a reference-style link] [Arbitrary case-insensitive reference text]

[I'm a relative reference to a repository file] (../blob/master/LICENSE)

[You can use numbers for reference-style link definitions] [1]

Or leave it empty and use the [link text itself]

Some text to show that the reference links can follow later.

[arbitrary case-insensitive reference text]: <https://www.mozilla.org>

[1]: <http://slashdot.org>  
 [link text itself]: <http://www.reddit.com>

### 7.2.3 arrow

<https://reimbar.org/dev/arrows/>

Up arrow: &uarr;

Down arrow: &darr;

Left arrow: &larr;

Right arrow: &rarr;

Double headed arrow: &harr;

### 7.2.4 superscript and subscript

script<sup>superscript</sup>subscript

script<sup>superscript</sup><sup>^</sup>

script<sup>superscript</sup>

~subscript~

script<sub>subscript</sub>

#### 7.2.4.1 LaTeX

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/580824/subscript-not-distinguished-enough>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/262295/make-subscript-size-smaller-always>

### 7.2.5 equation

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/26049762/erroneous-nesting-of-equation-structures-in-using-beginalign-in-a-multi-l>

#### 7.2.5.1 proof QED

<https://math.meta.stackexchange.com/questions/3582/qed-for-mathjax-here-on-stackexchange>

\tag\*{\$\Box\$}

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

□

\tag\*{\$\blacksquare\$}

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

■

### 7.2.6 image

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/25166624/insert-picture-table-in-r-markdown>

### 7.2.6.1 DiagrammeR / mermaid flowchart

Error: Functions that produce HTML output found in document targeting latex output.  
 Please change the output type of this document to HTML.  
 If you're aiming to have some HTML widgets shown in non-HTML format as a screenshot,  
 please install webshot or webshot2 R package for knitr to do the screenshot.  
 Alternatively, you can allow HTML output in non-HTML formats  
 by adding this option to the YAML front-matter of  
 your rmarkdown file:

```
always_allow_html: true
```

Note however that the HTML output will not be visible in non-HTML formats.

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/diagrams.html#diagrams>

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/40803017/how-to-include-diagrammer-mermaid-flowchart-in-a-rmarkdown-file>

```
{r}
library(DiagrammeR)
mermaid("
graph LR
A-->B
",
width = 100
)
```

<https://github.com/rich-iannone/DiagrammeR/issues/364>

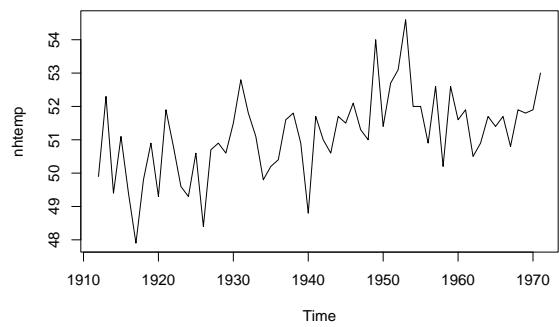
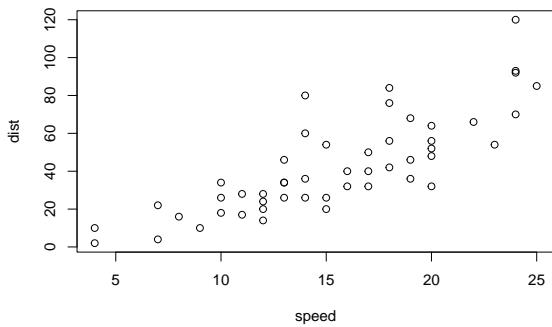
<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/55994210/how-to-solve-diagrammer-waste-of-space-issue-in-rmarkdown>

### 7.2.6.2 multiple images / figures in the same line

<https://cosname.github.io/rmarkdown-guide/rmarkdown-base.html#element-figure>

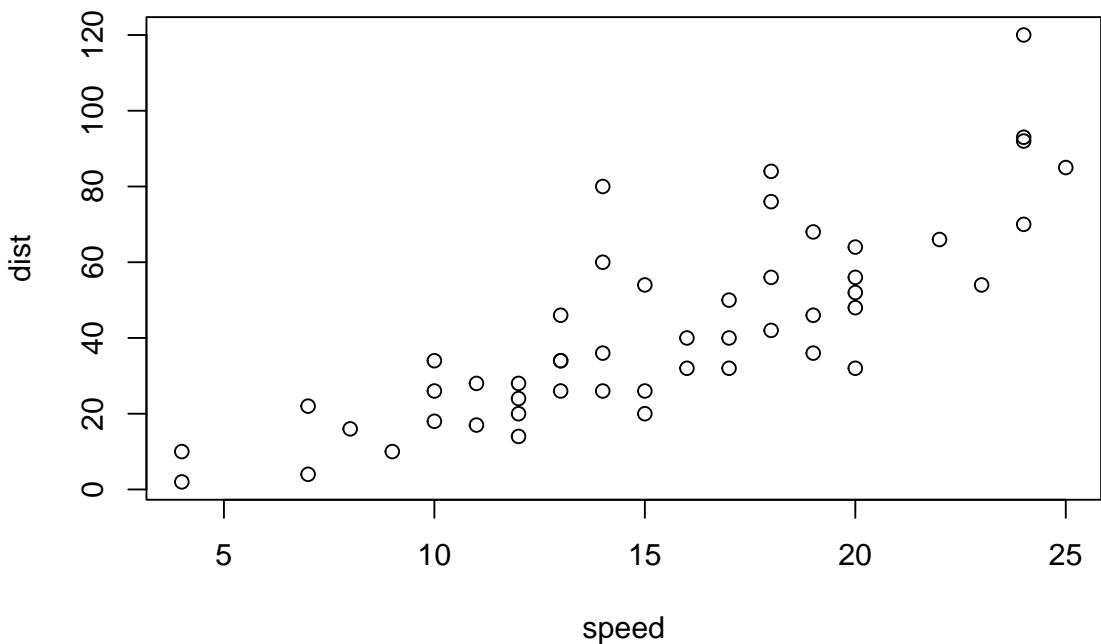
```
{r, fig.show = "hold", out.width = "50%"}
plot(cars)
plot(nhtemp)

plot(cars)
plot(nhtemp)
```

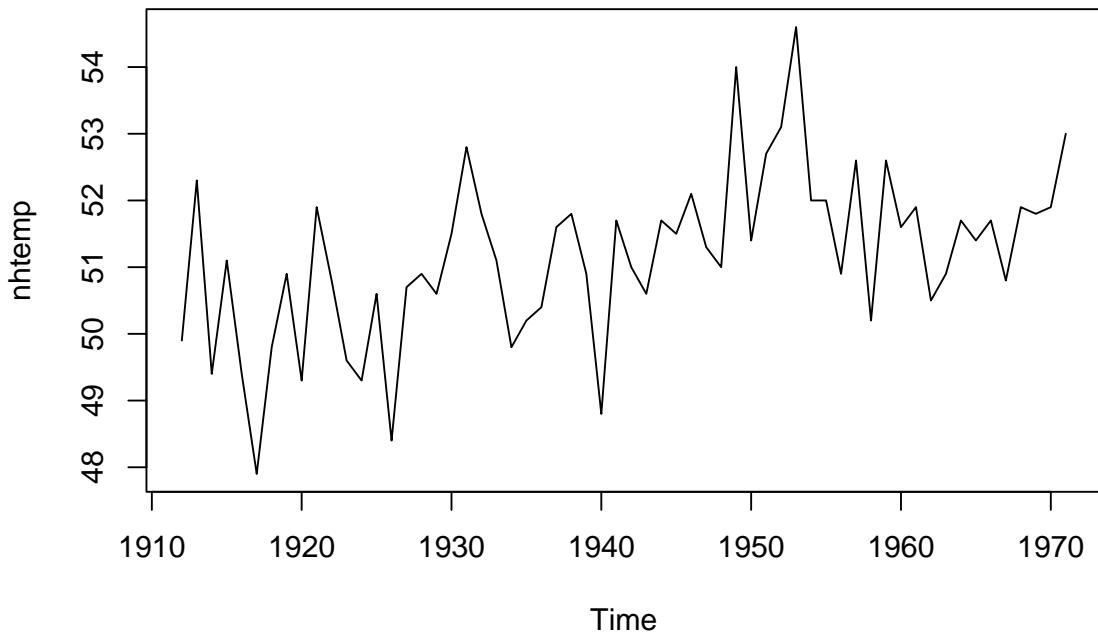


cf.

```
{r}
plot(cars)
plot(nhtemp)
plot(cars)
```



```
plot(nhtemp)
```



### 7.2.6.3 figure size

[https://sebastiansauer.github.io/figure\\_sizing\\_knitr/](https://sebastiansauer.github.io/figure_sizing_knitr/)

YAML in index.Rmd

```
---
```

```
title: "My Document"
output: html_document:
fig_width: 6
fig_height: 4
---
```

first R-chunk in your RMD document

```
knitr::opts_chunk$set(fig.width=12, fig.height=8)
```

width, height and options

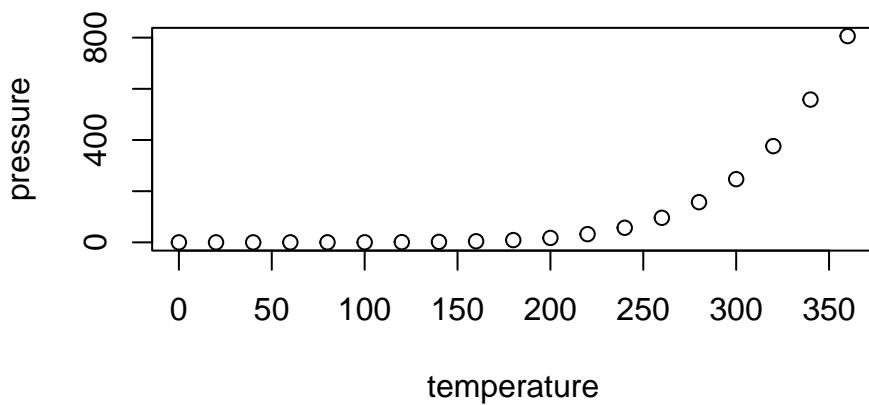
```
```{r fig.height = 3, fig.width = 5}
```

```
plot(pressure)
```

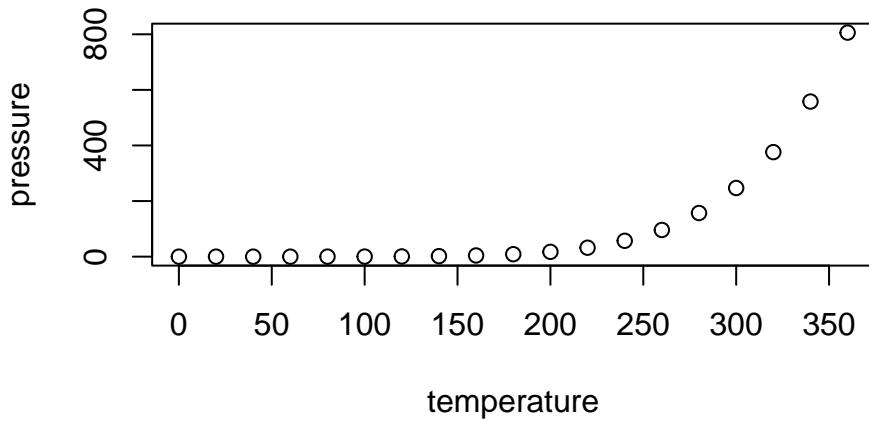
```
```
```

```
{r fig.height = 3, fig.width = 5}
```

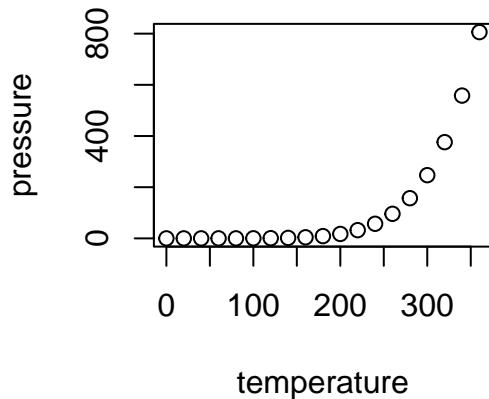
```
plot(pressure)
```



```
{r fig.height = 3, fig.width = 3, fig.align = "center"
plot(pressure)
```



```
{r fig.width = 5, fig.asp = .62
plot(pressure)
```

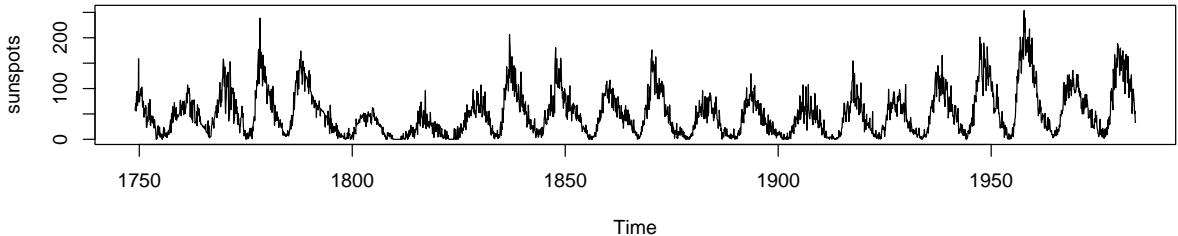


```
<center>
! [] (https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/images/cover.png){width=20%}
</center>
```

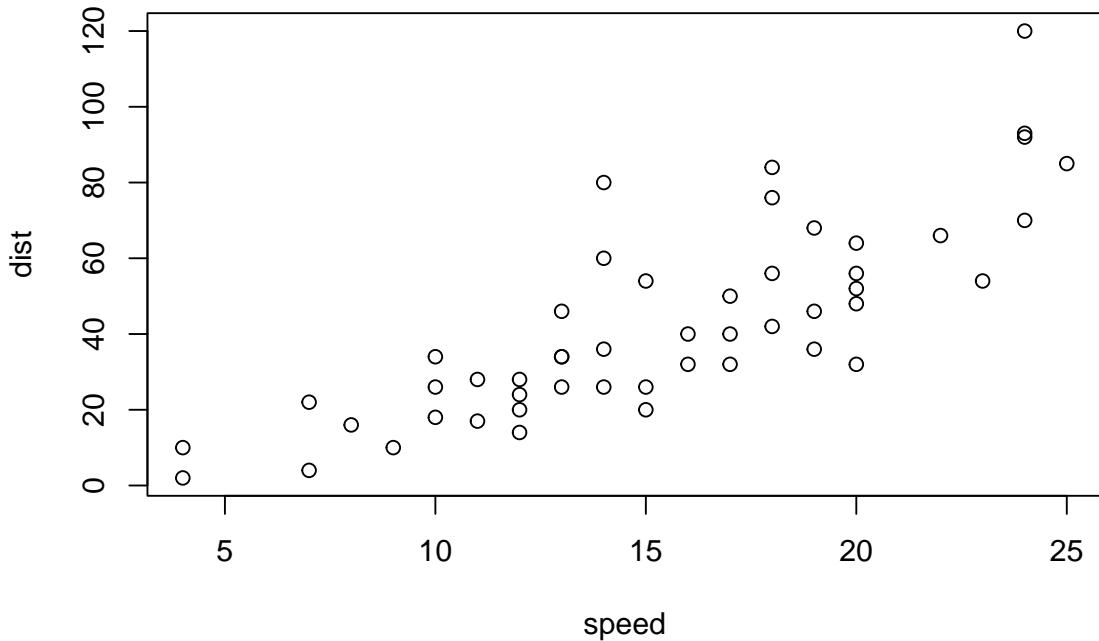
#### 7.2.6.3.1 knitr <https://yihui.org/knitr/options/>

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/tufte-figures.html>

```
par(mar = c(4, 4, .1, .2)); plot(sunspots)
```



```
plot(cars)
```



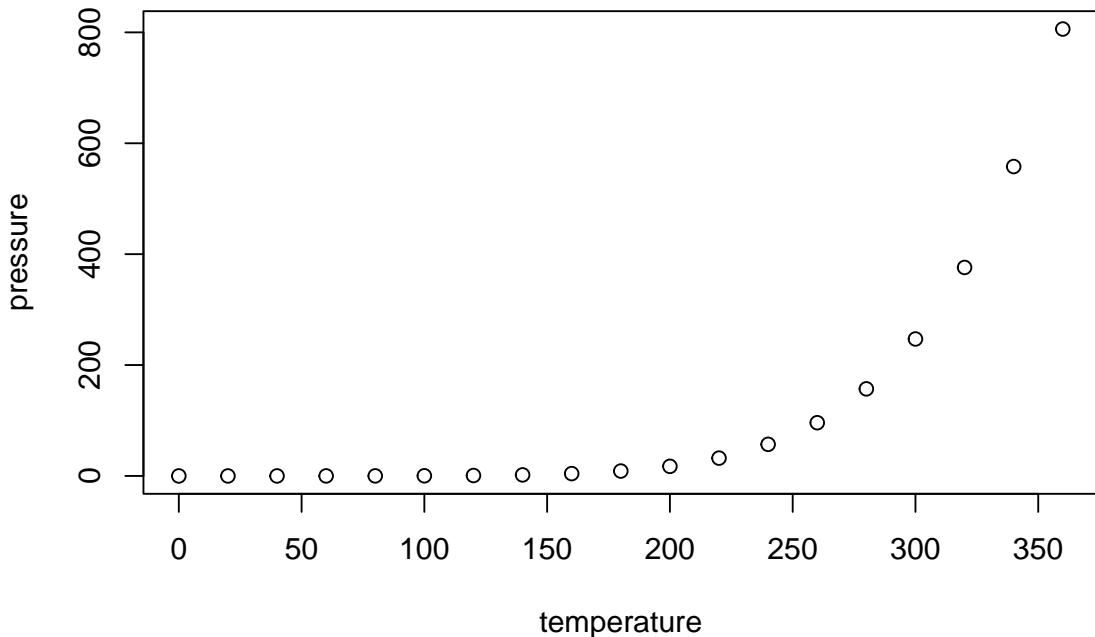
We know from the first fundamental theorem of calculus that  
for  $x$  in  $[a, b]$ :

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left( \int_a^x f(u) du \right) = f(x).$$

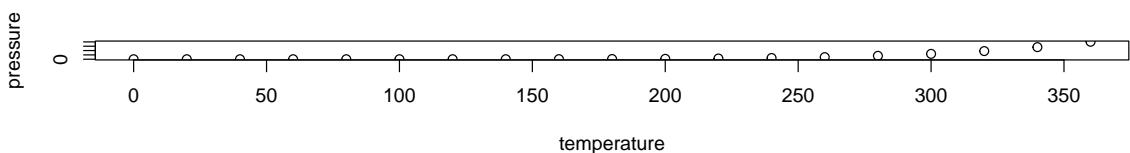
### 7.2.6.3.2 `out.width` vs. `fig.width` <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/29657777/how-to-make-fig-width-and-out-width-consistent-with-knitr>

when chunk option `cache=FALSE` is set, then `out.width` has no effect because no PDF output is created.  
Hence one has to specify exact measures in inches for `fig.width` and `fig.height` for each chunk

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/59567235/a-ggmap-too-small-when-rendered-within-a-rmd-file>



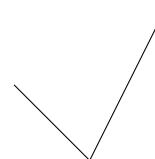
```
plot(pressure)
```



problem: `out.width='100%'` causing LaTeX Error: Not in outer par mode.

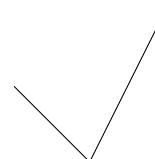
solution: `out.width=if (knitr:::is_html_output()) '100%'`

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



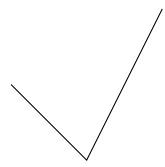
`fig.width=10, fig.height=2`

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



`out.width=if (knitr:::is_html_output()) '100%'`

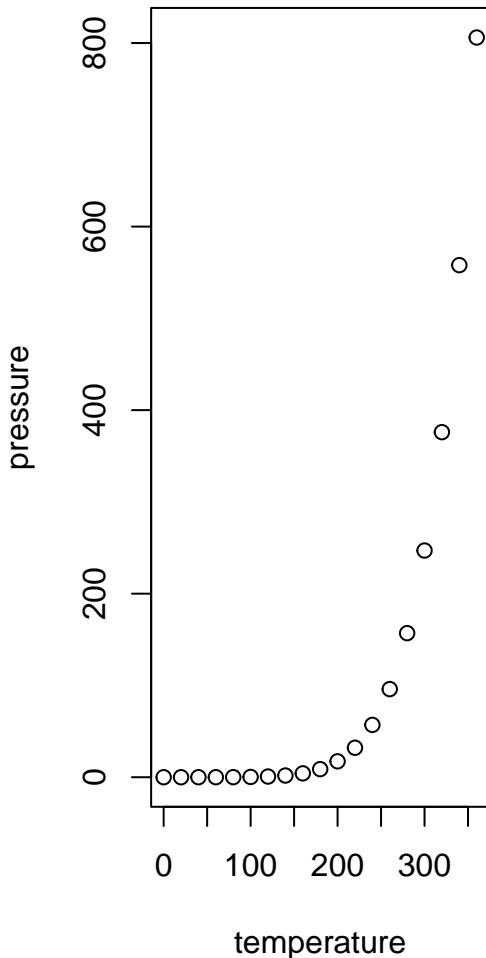
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



#### 7.2.6.4 dynamic knitr plot width and height

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/15365829/dynamic-height-and-width-for-knitr-plots>

```
plot(pressure)
```



#### 7.2.6.5 web image in PDF

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/46331896/how-can-i-insert-an-image-from-internet-to-the-pdf-file-produced-by-r-bookdown-i>

```

cover_url = 'https://bookdown.org/yihui/bookdown/images/cover.jpg'
if (!file.exists(cover_file <- xfun::url_filename(cover_url)))
  xfun::download_file(cover_url)
knitr::include_graphics(if (knitr::pandoc_to('html')) cover_url else cover_file)

```

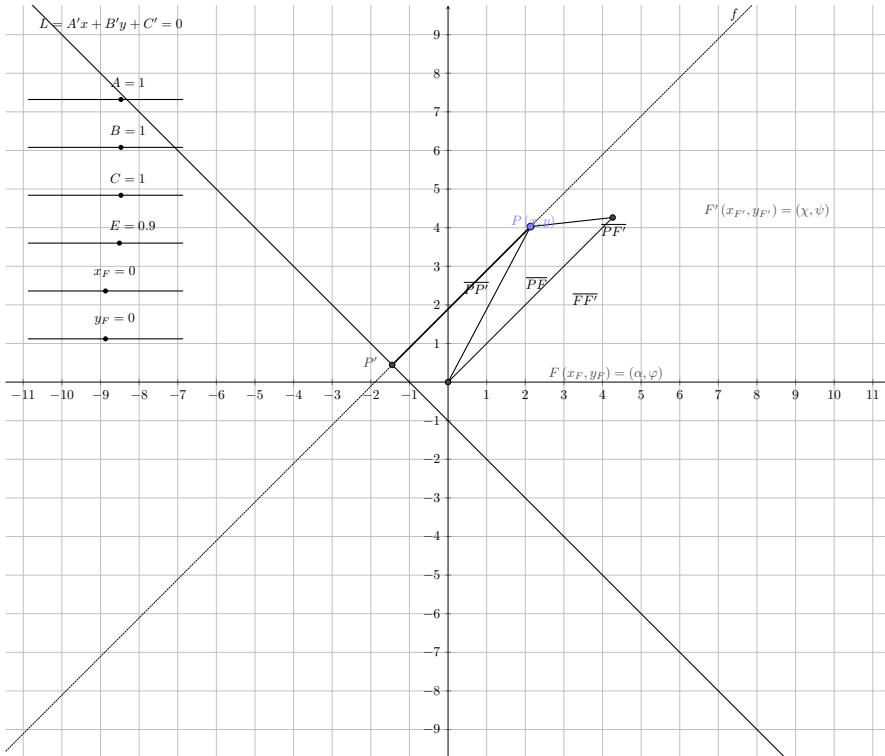


Figure 7.1: conic sections

### 7.2.6.6 SVG

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/50165404/how-to-make-a-pdf-using-bookdown-including-svg-images>

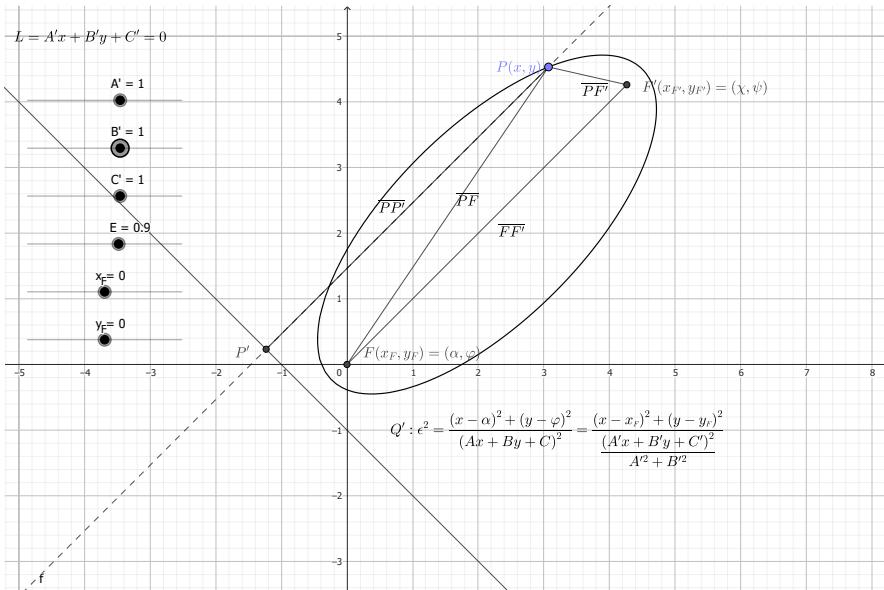
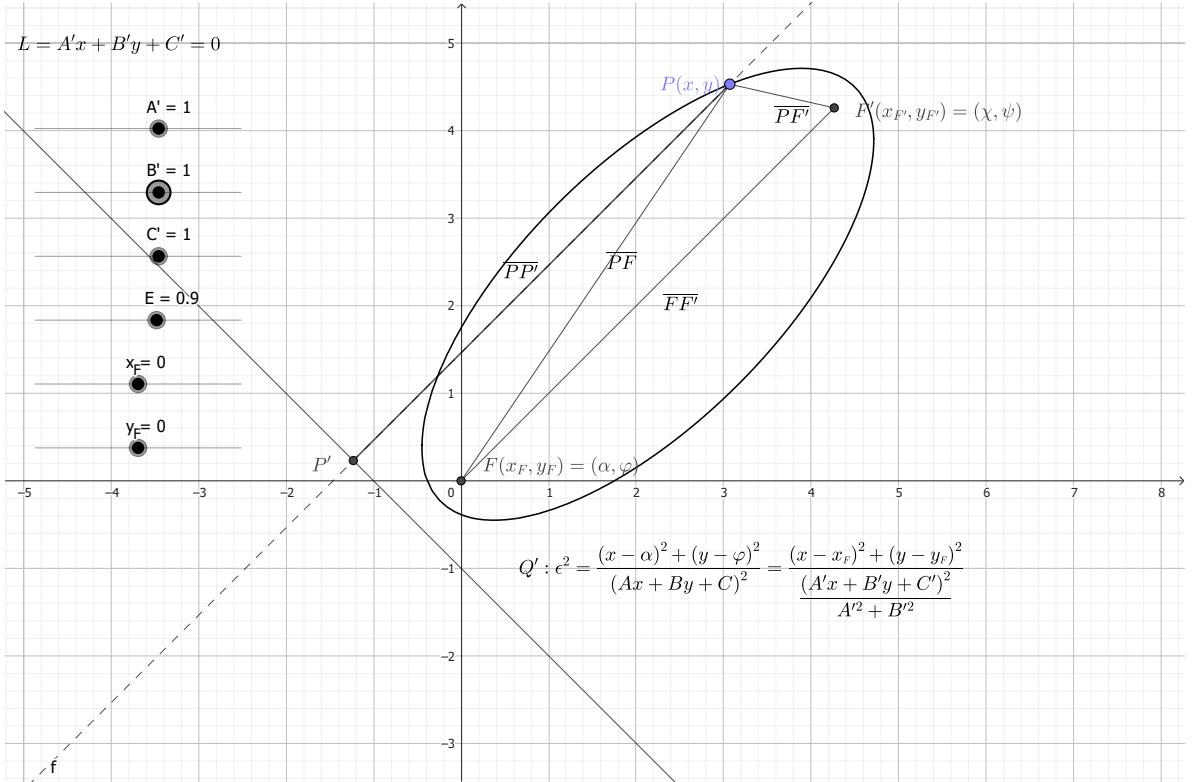


Figure 7.2: conic sections

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/34064292/is-it-possible-to-include-svg-image-in-pdf-document-rendered-by-rmarkdown>

### 7.2.7 horizontal rule

\*\*\*

horizontal rule (or slide break)

---

```
dim(iris)
```

```
## [1] 150    5
```

### 7.2.8 footnote

#### 7.2.9 hyperlink

PDF pandoc internal link will lose focus

equivalence relation [11] equivalence relation<sup>1</sup> equivalence relation<sup>[11]</sup>

equivalence class [10] equivalence class<sup>2</sup> equivalence class<sup>[10]</sup>

partition [9] partition<sup>3</sup> partition<sup>[9]</sup>

- LaTeX
  - TikZ<sup>[13]</sup>
    - \* TikZ-3Dplot
    - \* PGFplots
  - xypic = **xy-pic**<sup>4</sup>
- OverLeaf
- MathCha
- GeoGebra
- Python
  - MatPlotLib
  - Seaborn
  - Plotly

### 7.2.10 code chunk

#### 7.2.10.1 code folding

<https://cosname.github.io/rmarkdown-guide/rmarkdown-document.html#html-code-folding>

### 7.2.11 xaringan

slide realtime preview with RStudio addin Infinite Moon Reader in RStudio viewer

<https://github.com/yihui/xaringan>

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3n9nASHg9gc>

---

<sup>1</sup>{11} equivalence relation

<sup>2</sup>{10} equivalence class

<sup>3</sup>{9} partition

<sup>4</sup>{14} xy-pic

## 7.3 Bookdown

### 7.3.1 system locale

<https://bookdown.org/tpeimartin/ntpu-programming-for-data-science/appendix-d-.html>

Sys.getlocale()

Windows

Sys.setlocale(category = "LC\_ALL", locale = "UTF-8")

MacOS

Sys.setlocale(category = "LC\_ALL", locale = "en\_US.UTF-8")

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/multi-column.html>

### 7.3.2 render\_book()

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/bookdown/build-the-book.html>

```
render_book(input = ".", output_format = NULL, ..., clean = TRUE,
  envir = parent.frame(), clean_envir = !interactive(),
  output_dir = NULL, new_session = NA, preview = FALSE,
  config_file = "_bookdown.yml")
```

### 7.3.3 serve\_book()

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/bookdown/serve-the-book.html>

```
serve_book(dir = ".", output_dir = "_book", preview = TRUE,
  in_session = TRUE, quiet = FALSE, ...)
```

### 7.3.4 LaTeX

#### 7.3.4.1 hyperlink, URL, href

<https://www.baeldung.com/cs/latex-hyperref-url-hyperlinks>

<https://www.omidte.com/> 小技巧讓facebook和line顯示中文網址，網址不再變亂碼/

#### 7.3.4.2 ugly mathptmx $\sum$

PDF LaTeX \usepackage{fdsymbol} to have \overrightharpoon vector; however, there are too many side effects, including ugly mathptmx  $\sum$ , ...

```
\usepackage{fdsymbol} % vector over accent, but will use mathptmx
% replace the rather ugly mathptmx \sum operator with the equivalent Computer Modern one
\let\sum\relax
\DeclareSymbolFont{CMylargesymbols}{OMX}{cmex}{m}{n}
\DeclareMathSymbol{\sum}{\mathop}{CMylargesymbols}{50}
```

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/315102/different-sum-signs>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/275038/how-to-replace-mathptmx-sum-with-cm-sum>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/391410/calligraphic-symbols-are-too-fancy-with-mathptmx-package>

<https://blog.csdn.net/kongtaoxing/article/details/131005044>

In `preamble.tex`, add

```
% replace the rather ugly mathptmx \sum operator with the equivalent Computer Modern one
\let\sum\relax
\DeclareSymbolFont{CMLargesymbols}{OMX}{cmex}{m}{n}
\DeclareMathSymbol{\sum}{\mathop}{CMLargesymbols}{50}

\DeclareMathAlphabet{\mathcal}{OMS}{cmsy}{m}{n}
\DeclareSymbolFont{largesymbols}{OMX}{cmex}{m}{n}
```

### 7.3.4.3 LaTeX package in HTML document

<https://github.com/rstudio/rmarkdown/issues/1829>

```
---
title: "assignment"
author: "author"
output: html_document
---

$$
\require{cancel}
\cancel{x}
$$
```

$\cancel{x}$

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/18189175/how-to-use-textup-with-mathjax>

`\textup` is not available in MathJax. You can replace it with `\mathrm`, but `\mathrm` does not interpret spaces.

### 7.3.5 depth of table of contents `toc_depth`

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/49009212/how-to-change-toc-depth-in-r-bookdown-gitbook>

```
bookdown::gitbook:
  toc_depth: 2
```

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/68537309/how-can-i-specific-the-initial-level-to-have-my-table-of-contents-be-expanded-to>

```
toc:
  collapse: section
```

### 7.3.6 multi-column layout / two columns

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/multi-column.html>

### 7.3.6.1 for both HTML and PDF

figure size<sup>[7.2.6.3]</sup>

Below is a Div containing three child Divs side by side. The Div in the middle is empty, just to add more space between the left and right Divs.

```
::::::: {.cols data-latex=""}

::: {.col data-latex="{0.55\textwidth}"}
<!-- -->
:::

::: {.col data-latex="{0.05\textwidth}"}
\

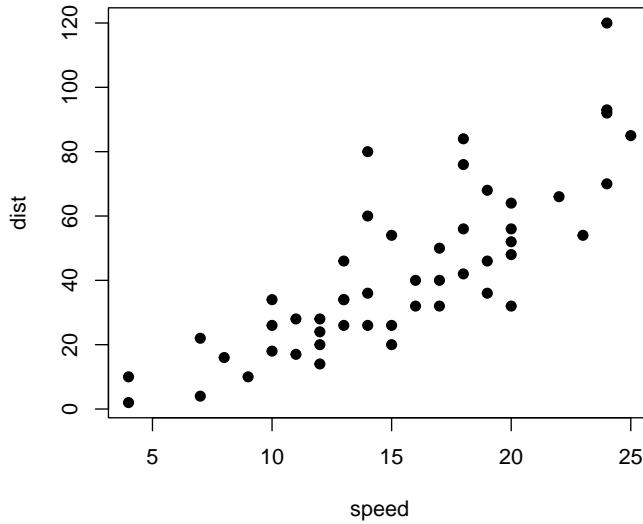
<!-- an empty Div (with a white space), serving as
a column separator -->
:::

::: {.col data-latex="{0.4\textwidth}"}
The figure on the left-hand side shows the `cars` data.
```

*Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute irure dolor in reprehenderit in voluptate velit esse cillum dolore eu fugiat nulla pariatur.*

```
:::
:::::::
```

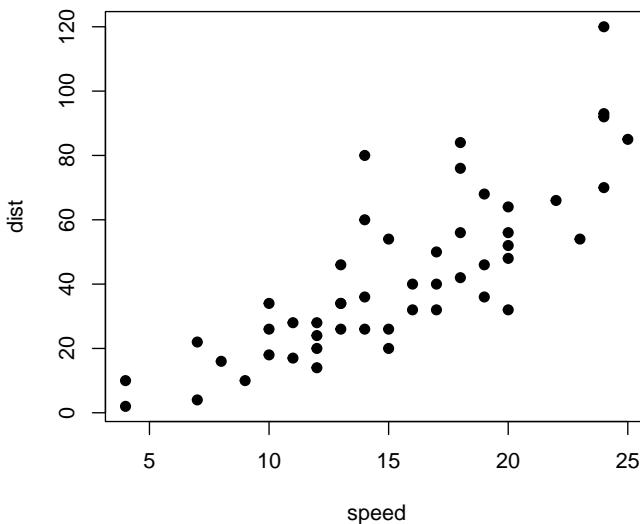
```
{r, echo=FALSE, fig.width=5, fig.height=4}
```



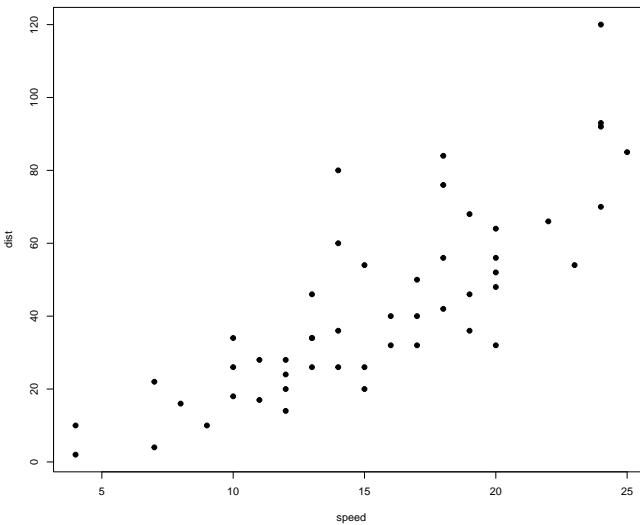
The figure on the left-hand side shows the cars data.

*Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute irure dolor in reprehenderit in voluptate velit esse cillum dolore eu fugiat nulla pariatur.*

```
{r, echo=FALSE, fig.width=10, fig.height=8, out.width = "100%"}
```



```
{r, echo=FALSE, fig.width=10, fig.height=8}
```



The figure on the left-hand side shows the `cars` data.

*Loreum ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute irure dolor in reprehenderit in voluptate velit esse cillum dolore eu fugiat nulla pariatur.*

The figure on the left-hand side shows the `cars` data.

*Loreum ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute irure dolor in reprehenderit in voluptate velit esse cillum dolore eu fugiat nulla pariatur.*

### 7.3.6.2 multi-column `fig.cap` must use `fig.pos="H"`

<https://community.rstudio.com/t/adding-fig-cap-caption-text-to-code-chunk-causes-figure-to-print-at-top-of-page-instead-of-where-it-should-be/30297>

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/figure-placement.html>

to avoid `\LaTeX` Error: Not in outer `par` mode for caption in multi-column `\LaTeX` PDF

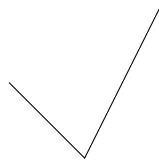
in `output.yml` add `extra_dependencies: ["float"]` under `bookdown::pdf_book`:

include first chunk `knitr::opts_chunk$set(fig.pos = "H", out.extra = "")` in `.Rmd`

add `out.width=if (knitr:::is_html_output()) '50%'` for TikZ chunk

thus complete chunk beginning with `{r, echo=FALSE, cache=TRUE, engine='tikz', fig.ext=if (knitr:::is_latex_output()) 'pdf' else 'png', fig.width=10, fig.height=2, out.width=if (knitr:::is_html_output()) '100%', fig.cap='')}`

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



LaTeX package `caption`

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/128485/how-to-make-a-caption-via-captionof-and-extra-margins-adhere-to-minipage-marg>

What is the different between using `\captionof{table}{ABC}` and `\caption{ABC}`?

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/514286/what-is-the-different-between-using-captionoftable-abc-and-captionabc>

side-by-side table

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/73745714/how-to-print-gt-tbl-tables-side-by-side-with-knitr-kable>

R ternary operator

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/8790143/does-the-ternary-operator-exist-in-r>

### 7.3.6.3 caption above figure

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/56979022/caption-above-figure-in-html-rmarkdown>

`fig.topcaption=TRUE`

### 7.3.6.4 for only HTML

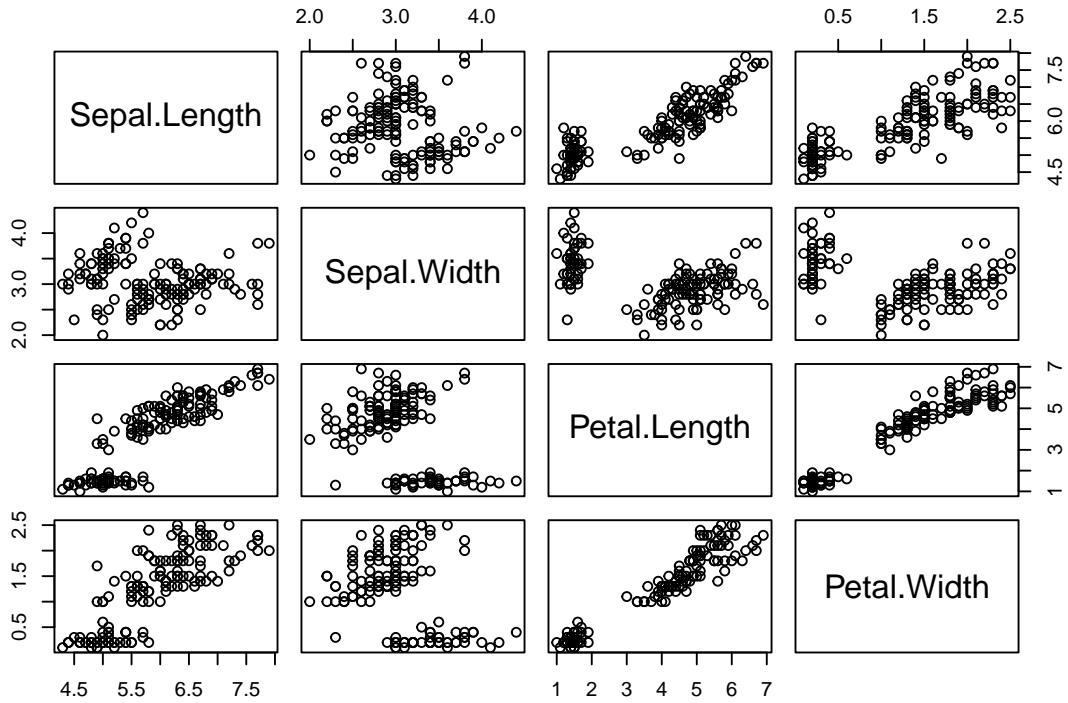
**7.3.6.4.1 CSS flex** Here is the **first** Div.

```
str(iris)
```

```
## 'data.frame':   150 obs. of  5 variables:
## $ Sepal.Length: num  5.1 4.9 4.7 4.6 5 5.4 4.6 5 4.4 4.9 ...
## $ Sepal.Width : num  3.5 3 3.2 3.1 3.6 3.9 3.4 3.4 2.9 3.1 ...
## $ Petal.Length: num  1.4 1.4 1.3 1.5 1.4 1.7 1.4 1.5 1.4 1.5 ...
## $ Petal.Width : num  0.2 0.2 0.2 0.2 0.2 0.4 0.3 0.2 0.2 0.1 ...
## $ Species      : Factor w/ 3 levels "setosa","versicolor",...: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 ...
```

And this block will be put on the right:

```
plot(iris[, -5])
```



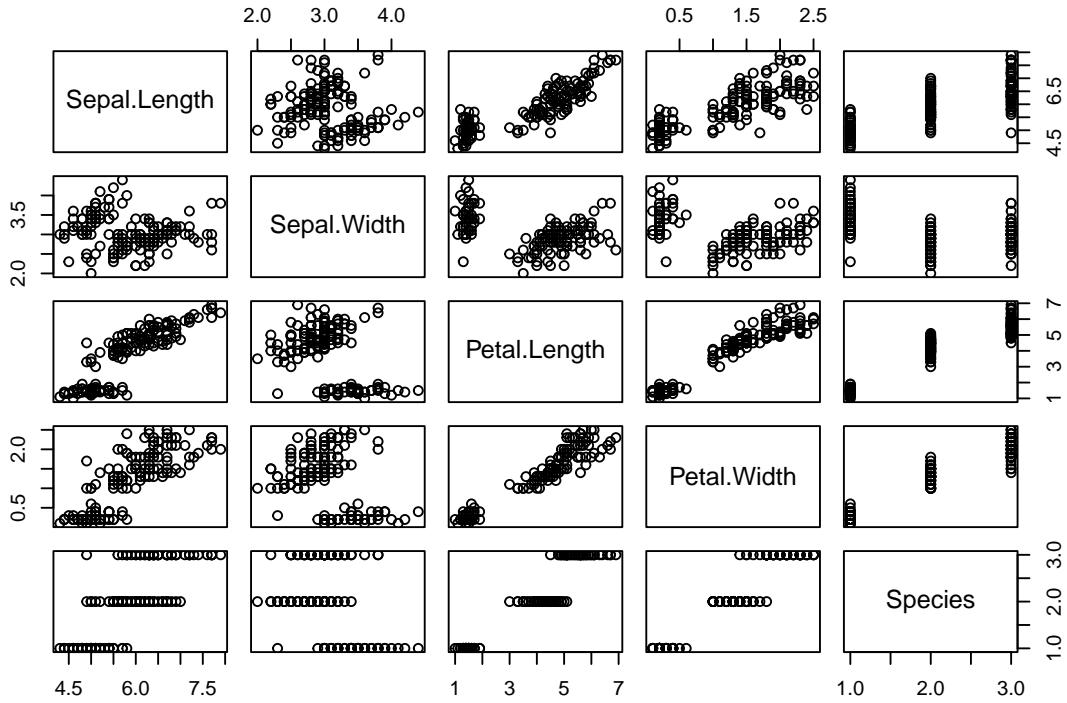
#### 7.3.6.4.2 CSS grid <https://github.com/yihui/knitr/issues/1743>

<https://medium.com/enjoy-life-enjoy-coding/css-所以我說那個版能不能好切一點-grid-基本用法-cd763091cf70>

```
head(iris)
```

```
##   Sepal.Length Sepal.Width Petal.Length Petal.Width Species
## 1          5.1         3.5          1.4         0.2  setosa
## 2          4.9         3.0          1.4         0.2  setosa
## 3          4.7         3.2          1.3         0.2  setosa
## 4          4.6         3.1          1.5         0.2  setosa
## 5          5.0         3.6          1.4         0.2  setosa
## 6          5.4         3.9          1.7         0.4  setosa
```

```
plot(iris)
```



## 7.4 conditional block/chunk for either HTML or PDF, and Chinese issue

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/76240244/bookdown-conditional-display-of-text-and-code-blocks-latex-pdf-vs-html>

等價關係 equivalence relation

$R$  is an equivalence relation over  $A \times B$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} R = \sim = \{\langle x, y \rangle | x \sim y\} \subseteq A \times B & (\text{e}) \text{ equivalence 等價} \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ R = \{\langle x, y \rangle | xRy\} \subseteq A \times B & (\text{R}) \text{ relation} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (xRx) & (\text{r}) \text{ reflexive} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (xRy \Rightarrow yRx) & (\text{s}) \text{ symmetric} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle, \langle y, z \rangle \in R \left( \begin{cases} xRy \\ yRz \end{cases} \Rightarrow xRz \right) & (\text{t}) \text{ transitive} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} R = \{\langle x, y \rangle | xRy\} \subseteq A \times B & \text{關係} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (\langle x, x \rangle \in R) & \text{自反} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (\langle y, x \rangle \in R) & \text{對稱} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle, \langle y, z \rangle \in R (\langle x, z \rangle \in R) & \text{遞移} \end{cases}$$

## 7.5 video embedding

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/42543206/r-markdown-compile-error>

always\_allow\_html: true

```
install.packages("webshot")
webshot::install_phantomjs()
```

however webshot not work

Error: cannot find bilibili.com

<https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/vembedr/vignettes/embed.html>

```
## Warning: package 'vembedr' was built under R version 4.2.3
```

```
## embed_youtube("qeMqtt7NFDM")
```

### 7.5.1 timestamp

- YouTube: <https://www.youtube.com/embed/%7BvideoID%7D?start=%7Bsecond%7D>
- BiliBili: <https://player.bilibili.com/player.html?bvid=%7BvideoID%7D&autoplay=0&t=%7Bsecond%7D>

## 7.6 equation term coloring

### 7.6.1 font color

RegEx replacement in RStudio for {\color{(\w+)} in LyX to be replaced with \color{\$1}{} in HTML document, and remain the same for PDF document

In HTML document, if no {} for text range, only the first following term will take effect

\color{orange}{x=y}

*x = y*

\color{orange} and \color{cyan} are better color for HTML GitBook White and Night themes and PDF

\color{cyan}{x=y}

*x = y*

\color{cyan}{x=y}

*x = y*

```
::: {show-in="html"}

$$
\frac{\colorbox{#FFD1DC}{$\epsilon^2 \left( y_{\scriptscriptstyle{L}} - y_{\scriptscriptstyle{L}} \right)^2}}{F} \cdot \left( 1 - \epsilon^2 \right)
$$

:::
```

```
:::: {show-in="pdf"}

$$
\frac{\colorbox{red!50}{\text{\ensuremath{\epsilon^2 \left(y_{\{\{\scriptscriptstyle F\}} - y_{\{\{\scriptscriptstyle L\}}\right)^2}\}}}}{1-\epsilon^2}
$$

:::
```

## 7.6.2 background color

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/font-color.html>

LaTex color

<https://latexcolor.com/>

[https://www.overleaf.com/learn/latex/Using\\_colors\\_in\\_LaTeX](https://www.overleaf.com/learn/latex/Using_colors_in_LaTeX)

<https://latex-tutorial.com/color-latex/#%3A%3Atext=To%20summarize%2C%20pyellow!50efined%20colors%20in,w>

LaTex color methods

color frame

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/582748/highlight-equation-with-boxes-and-arrows>

color box

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/567739/how-to-move-and-size-colorbox>

color box with round corners

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/568880/color-box-with-rounded-corners>

highlighting

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/318991/highlighting-math>

<https://forum.remnote.io/t/highlighting-latex-formulas/149>

LyX

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/250069/create-a-color-box> <https://latexlyx.blogspot.com/2013/12/lyx.html>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/635486/prevent-lyx-from-escaping-math-in-color-box-title>

Bookdown - conditional display of text and code blocks (LaTeX/PDF vs. HTML) <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/76240244/bookdown-conditional-display-of-text-and-code-blocks-latex-pdf-vs-html>

$$F = ma$$

<https://community.rstudio.com/t/highlighting-text-inline-in-rmarkdown-or-bookdown-pdf/35118/4>

$$F = ma$$

$$F = F$$

$$F = ma$$

(7.1)

$$F = ma$$

$$Y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 X_1 + \dots + \beta_n X_n$$

## 7.7 link and reference

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/57469501/cross-referencing-bookdownhtml-document2-not-working>

$$E = mc^2 \quad (7.2)$$

```
\@ref(nice-label) 7.8
[link to partition] [partition] link to partition
[partition] \@ref(partition)
partition [#partition] (9) @ref(#partition)
[equivalence class] \@ref(equivalence-class)
equivalence class (10)
equivalence class [#equivalence class] (@ref(equivalence class)) @ref(#equivalence class)
[equivalence-class] [#equivalence-class] (10) @ref(#equivalence-class)
X [equivalence-class.html] [equivalence-class.html#equivalence-class] (@ref(equivalence-class.html))
@ref(equivalence-class.html#equivalence-class)
equivalence relation [#equivalence relation] (@ref(equivalence relation)) @ref(#equivalence relation)
[equivalence-relation] [#equivalence-relation] (11) @ref(#equivalence-relation)
X [equivalence-relation.html] [equivalence-relation.html#equivalence-relation] (@ref(equivalence-relation.html))
@ref(equivalence-relation.html#equivalence-relation)
```

## 7.8 number and reference equations

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/71595882/rstudio-error-in-windows-running-pdflatex-exe-on-file-name-tex-exit-code-10>

[\#eq:emc \@ref\(eq:emc\)](https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/bookdown-markdown.html#equations)

[\#eq:emc \@ref\(eq:emc\)](https://stackoverflow.com/questions/55923290/consistent-math-equation-numbering-in-bookdown-across-pdf-docx-html-output)

$C$  is an equivalence class of  $a$  on  $A$

$$\Leftrightarrow [a]_\sim = C = \left\{ x \left| \begin{array}{l} a \in A \\ x \in A \\ x \sim a \\ \sim \text{ is an equivalence relation over } A \times A = A^2 \end{array} \right. \right\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset \quad (7.3)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow [a] = [a]_\sim = \left\{ x \left| \begin{array}{l} a \in A \\ x \in A \\ x \sim a \\ \sim \text{ is an equivalence relation on } A \end{array} \right. \right\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset$$

$$\Rightarrow [a]_\sim = \{x | x \sim a\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset$$

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/bookdown-markdown.html#cross-referencing>

This cross reference is the Fig. 7.4

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/51595939/bookdown-cross-reference-figure-in-another-file>

I ran into the same issue and came up with this solution if you aim at compiling 2 different pdfs. It relies on LaTeX's xr package for cross references: <https://stackoverflow.com/a/52532269/576684>

## 7.9 footnote

```
noun^ [This is a footnote]
noun[^202401260000-test-cross-link-1]
[^202401260000-test-cross-link-1]: This is a footnote.
```

noun<sup>5</sup>

## 7.10 citation

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/48965247/use-csl-file-for-pdf-output-in-bookdown/49145699#49145699>

citation 1<sup>3</sup> citation 2<sup>3</sup>

citation 3<sup>4</sup> citation 4<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup>This is a footnote.

### 7.10.1 citation in fig.cap

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/591882/citation-within-a-latex-figure-caption-in-rmarkdown>

```
(ref:rudolph) *nice* cite: [@Lam94] .
(ref:campbell1963) *nice* cite: [@campbell1963] .
(ref:campbell1963) ([@campbell1963]
(ref:campbell1963) \ [ @campbell1963]
```

	Sources of Invalidity								External			
	Internal	External							Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
	History	Maturity	Testing	Instrumentation	Regression	Selection	Mortality	Interaction of Selection and Maturation, etc.	Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
<i>Pre-Experimental Designs:</i>												
1. One-Shot Case Study	X	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2. One-Group Pretest-Posttest Design	O	X	O	—	—	?	+	+	—	—	—	?
3. Static-Group Comparison	X	O	O	+	?	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
<i>True Experimental Designs:</i>												
4. Pretest-Posttest Control Group Design	R	O	X	O	R	O	R	O	+	+	?	?
5. Solomon Four-Group Design	R	O	X	O	R	O	R	X	O	+	?	?
6. Posttest-Only Control Group Design	R	R	X	O	R	R	R	R	+	+	?	?

Figure 7.3: pre- and true experimental designs ( <sup>5</sup> p.8)

### 7.10.2 backreference

<https://community.rstudio.com/t/how-to-create-a-backreference-to-place-of-citation-in-rmarkdown/84866>

<https://blog.csdn.net/RobertChenGuangzhi/article/details/50455429>

<https://latex.org/forum/viewtopic.php?t=3722>

## 7.11 environment for definition, theorem, proof

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/bookdown-markdown.html>

<https://github.com/rstudio/rstudio/issues/5264>

@howthebodyworks Ideally, previews of such equations should also work inside a theorem, although I could survive without that.

<https://github.com/rstudio/rstudio/issues/8773>

**Theorem 7.1** (Theorem Name). *Here is my theorem.*

*Proof Name.* Here is my proof. □

**Theorem 7.2** (Pythagorean theorem). *For a right triangle, if  $c$  denotes the length of the hypotenuse and  $a$  and  $b$  denote the lengths of the other two sides, we have*

$$a^2 + b^2 \stackrel{7.2}{=} c^2$$

**Definition 7.1** (Definition Name). Here is my definition.

number and reference equations

(7.3)

(7.2)

7.2

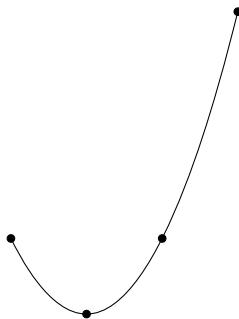


Figure 7.4: parabola arc with points

## 7.12 slide or presentation

### 7.12.1 Xaringan and Infinite Moon Reader

<https://rpubs.com/RW1304/xaringan-zh>

<https://slides.yihui.org/xaringan/#1>

<https://slides.yihui.org/xaringan/zh-CN.html#1>

<https://github.com/yihui/xaringan/tree/master>

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/xaringan.html>

### 7.12.2 ioslides

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gkyjTcPCTIM>

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/ioslides-presentation.html>

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/63749683/how-to-set-up-theorem-environment-in-the-rmarkdown-presentation>

```
---
```

```
title: "Theorem demo"
output:
  ioslides_presentation:
    css: style.css
---
```

```
/* theorem environment _ plain */

/*
.theorem {
  display: block;
  font-style: italic;
  font-size: 24px;
  font-family: "Times New Roman";
  color: black;
}
.theorem::before {
  content: "Theorem. ";
  font-weight: bold;
  font-style: normal;
}
.theorem[text]::before {
  content: "Theorem (" attr(text) ") ";
}
.theorem p {
  display: inline;
}
*/
/* theorem environment _ Copenhagen style */

/*
.theorem {
  display: block;
  font-style: italic;
  font-size: 24px;
  font-family: "Times New Roman";
  color: black;
  border-radius: 10px;
  background-color: rgb(222,222,231);
  box-shadow: 5px 10px 8px #888888;
}
.theorem::before {
  content: "Theorem. ";
  font-weight: bold;
  font-style: normal;
  display: inline-block;
  width: -webkit-fill-available;
  color: white;
```

```
border-radius: 10px 10px 0 0;  
padding: 10px 5px 5px 15px;  
background-color: rgb(38, 38, 134);  
}  
.theorem p {  
    padding: 15px 15px 15px 15px;  
}  
*/
```

### 7.12.3 PowerPoint

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/powerpoint-presentation.html>



# Chapter 8

## test2

### 8.1 verbatim

<https://community.rstudio.com/t/continued-issues-with-new-verbatim-in-rstudio/139737>

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/verbatim-code-chunks.html>

```
```r  
1 + 1  
## [1] 2
```

We can output arbitrary content **\*\*verbatim\*\***.

```
```r  
1 + 1  
## [1] 2
```

The content can contain inline code like  
78.5398163, too.



# Chapter 9

## partition

$$\begin{aligned} \{A_i\}_{i \in I} = \{A_i | i \in I\} \text{ is a partition of a set } A \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \forall i \in I (A_i \neq \emptyset) \\ A = \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \\ \forall i, j \in I (i \neq j \Rightarrow A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset) \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

[https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Definition:Set\\_Partition](https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Definition:Set_Partition)



# Chapter 10

## equivalence class

$C$  is an equivalence class of  $a$  on  $A$

$$\Leftrightarrow [a]_{\sim} = C = \left\{ x \left| \begin{array}{l} a \in A \\ x \in A \\ x \sim a \\ \sim \text{ is an equivalence relation over } A \times A = A^2 \end{array} \right. \right\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset$$
$$\Leftrightarrow [a] = [a]_{\sim} = \left\{ x \left| \begin{array}{l} a \in A \\ x \in A \\ x \sim a \\ \sim \text{ is an equivalence relation on } A \end{array} \right. \right\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset$$
$$\Rightarrow [a]_{\sim} = \{x | x \sim a\} \subseteq A \neq \emptyset$$

where the definition of **equivalence relation** can be found in 11.



# Chapter 11

## equivalence relation

等價關係 equivalence relation

$R$  is an equivalence relation over  $A \times B$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} R = \sim = \{\langle x, y \rangle | x \sim y\} \subseteq A \times B & (\text{e}) \text{ equivalence 等價} \\ \vdots & \end{cases}$$
$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} R = \{\langle x, y \rangle | xRy\} \subseteq A \times B & (\text{R}) \text{ relation} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (xRx) & (\text{r}) \text{ reflexive} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (xRy \Rightarrow yRx) & (\text{s}) \text{ symmetric} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle, \langle y, z \rangle \in R \left( \begin{cases} xRy \\ yRz \end{cases} \Rightarrow xRz \right) & (\text{t}) \text{ transitive} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} R = \{\langle x, y \rangle | xRy\} \subseteq A \times B & \text{關係} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (\langle x, x \rangle \in R) & \text{自反} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle \in R (\langle y, x \rangle \in R) & \text{對稱} \\ \forall \langle x, y \rangle, \langle y, z \rangle \in R (\langle x, z \rangle \in R) & \text{遞移} \end{cases}$$



# Chapter 12

## Python

### 12.1 using Python in R / RMarkdown

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown/language-engines.html>

```
names(knitr::knit_engines$get())
```

```
## [1] "awk"          "bash"         "coffee"        "gawk"         "groovy"
## [6] "haskell"      "lein"         "mysql"        "node"         "octave"
## [11] "perl"         "php"          "pgsql"        "Rscript"      "ruby"
## [16] "sas"          "scala"        "sed"          "sh"          "stata"
## [21] "zsh"          "asis"         "asy"          "block"        "block2"
## [26] "bslisp"        "c"            "cat"          "cc"          "comment"
## [31] "css"          "dittaa"       "dot"          "embed"       "eviews"
## [36] "exec"         "fortran"      "fortran95"    "go"          "highlight"
## [41] "js"            "julia"        "python"       "R"           "Rcpp"
## [46] "sass"         "scss"         "sql"          "stan"        "targets"
## [51] "tikz"         "verbatim"     "theorem"      "lemma"       "corollary"
## [56] "proposition"  "conjecture"   "definition"   "example"     "exercise"
## [61] "hypothesis"   "proof"        "remark"       "solution"
```

[https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/articles/python\\_packages.html](https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/articles/python_packages.html)

```
x = 'hello, python world!'
print(x.split(' '))
```

```
## ['hello,', 'python', 'world!']
```

```
library(reticulate)
virtualenv_python()
```

```
library(reticulate)
# conda_list()
```

```
library(reticulate)
virtualenv_list()
```

[https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/reference/install\\_python.html](https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/reference/install_python.html)

```
library(reticulate)
version <- "3.9.12"
# install_python(version)

## create a new environment
# virtualenv_create("r-reticulate", version = version)

# use_virtualenv("r-reticulate")

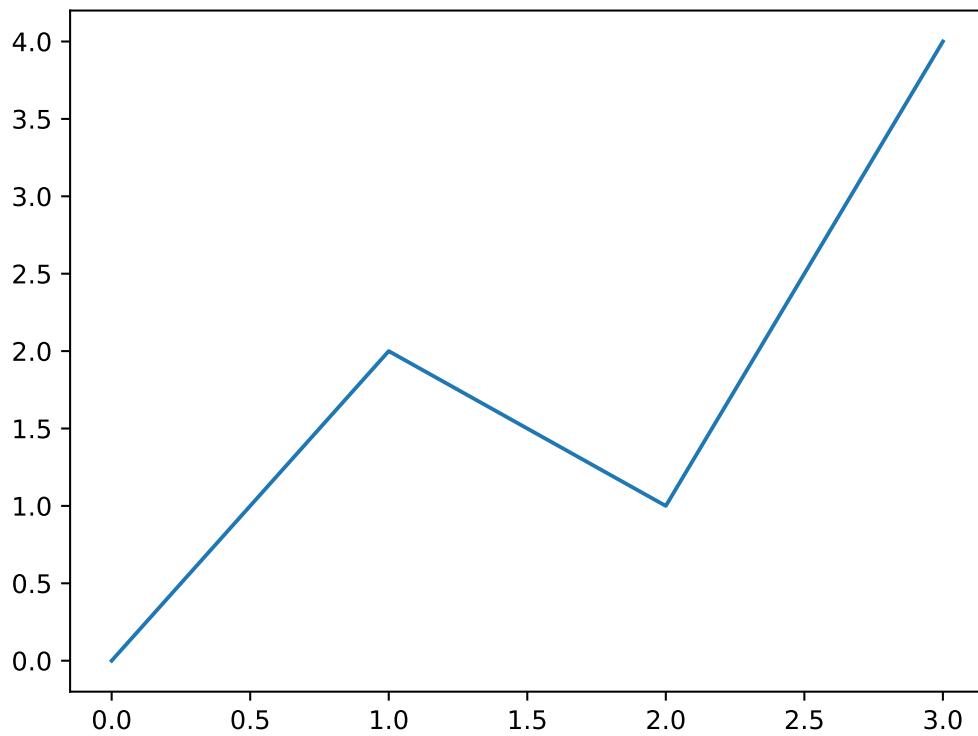
## install Matplotlib
# virtualenv_install("r-reticulate", "matplotlib")

## import Matplotlib (it will be automatically discovered in "r-reticulate")
matplotlib <- import("matplotlib")
```

copy C:\Users\RW\AppData\Local\r-reticulate\r-reticulate\pyenv\pyenv-win\versions\3.9.12\tcl  
and C:\Users\RW\AppData\Local\r-reticulate\r-reticulate\pyenv\pyenv-win\versions\3.9.12\tcl  
two folders to the folder C:\Users\RW\AppData\Local\r-reticulate\r-reticulate\pyenv\pyenv-win\ver

```
# library(reticulate)
# use_virtualenv("r-reticulate")
# # matplotlib <- import("matplotlib")
# matplotlib$use("Agg", force = TRUE)
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
plt.plot([0, 2, 1, 4])
plt.show()
```



## 12.2 SoloLearn

<https://www.sololearn.com/>

<https://www.sololearn.com/en/learn/courses/python-intermediate>

## 12.3 list comprehension

<https://www.sololearn.com/en/learn/courses/python-intermediate/lesson/1188906590?p=1>

```
cubes = [i**3 for i in range(5)]  
print(cubes) ## [0, 1, 8, 27, 64]
```

## 12.4 functional programming

- pure function
- lambda
- map
- filter
- generator
- decorator

- recursion
- \*args
- \*\*kwargs

## 12.5 object-oriented programming = OOP

- class
- inheritance
- magic method
- operator overloading
- data hiding
- static method
- property

# Chapter 13

## TikZ

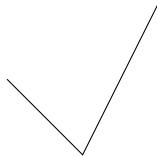
- TikZ
  - PGFplots<sup>[13.4]</sup>
  - tikzplotlib<sup>[13.5]</sup>: Python<sup>[12]</sup> matplotlib<sup>[27]</sup> export to TikZ<sup>[13]</sup>.tex

multi-column 7.3.6

```
knitr::opts_chunk$set(fig.pos = "H", out.extra = "")
```

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/html-scroll.html>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



How to speed up bookdown generation?

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/56541371/how-to-speed-up-bookdown-generation>

TikZ and PGFplots

What's the relation between packages PGFplots and TikZ?

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/285925/whats-the-relation-between-packages-pgfplots-and-tikz>

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bQugbYq0BVA>

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ft4Kg9emK1k&list=PLg5nrpKdkk2DWcg3scb75AknF7DJXs81k&index=18>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\def\alpha{1.5} % amplitude
\def\beta{2}    % frequency
\draw[->] (-0.2,0)--(4.2,0)
← node[right, font=\small] {$x$};
\draw[->] (0,-4)--(0,0.5)
← node[above] {$y$};
\draw[domain=0:4,smooth,variable=\t,blue,thick]
← plot ({\alpha * (\beta*\t -
sin(deg(\beta*\t)))},{-\alpha * (1 -
cos(deg(\beta*\t)))});
% \node[above] at (2, 0.5)
← {Brachistochrone Curve};
\node[above, font=\footnotesize] at
← (2, 1) {Brachistochrone Curve};
\node[above, font=\footnotesize] at
← (2, 0) {$\begin{aligned} &x=r(t-\sin t) \\ &y=r(1-\cos t) \end{aligned}$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

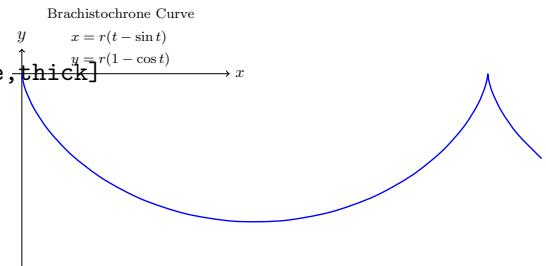


Figure 13.1: Brachistochrone Curve

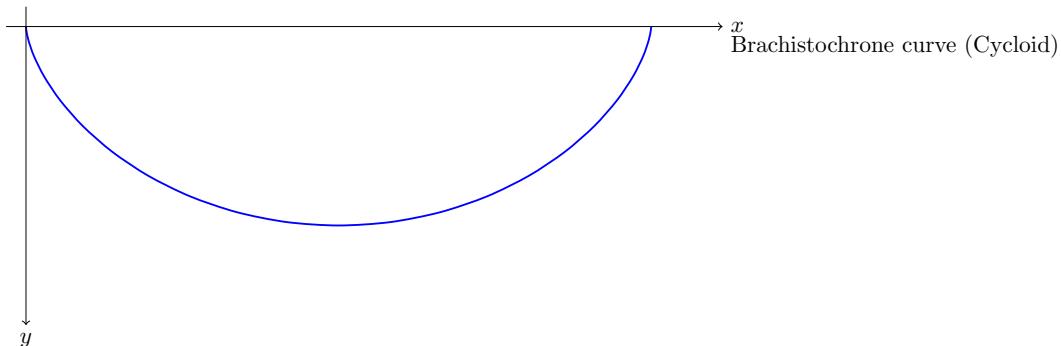


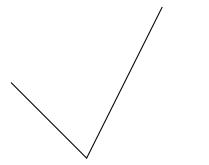
Figure 13.2: Brachistochrone Curve

## 13.1 2D

[https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/127155579?utm\\_psn=1741479950987960320](https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/127155579?utm_psn=1741479950987960320)

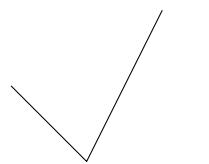
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



```
out.width=if (knitr:::is_html_output())
'20%'
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw[rounded corners]
    (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2)--(-1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

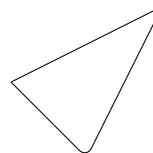


Figure 13.3: rounded corner pseudo-closed triangle

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw[rounded corners]
    (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2)--cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

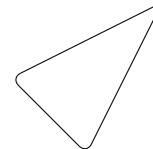


Figure 13.4: rounded corner triangle

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw[rounded corners]
    (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2)--cycle;
  \draw[rounded corners]
    (-1,1)--(0,0)--(1,2)--(-1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

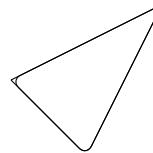


Figure 13.5: triangle vs. pseudo-closed triangle

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (4,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Figure 13.6: rectangle

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

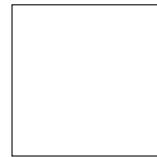


Figure 13.7: square

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) circle (1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

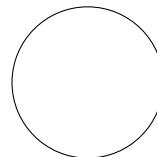


Figure 13.8: circle

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) circle (1);
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

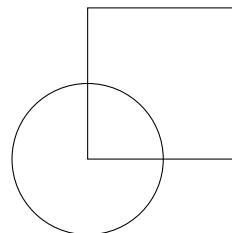


Figure 13.9: circle and square

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (1,1) ellipse (2 and 1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

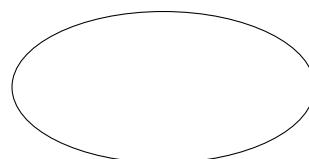


Figure 13.10: ellipse

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (1 ,1) arc (0:270:1);
  \draw (6 ,1) arc (0:270:2 and 1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

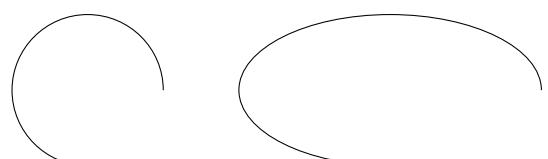


Figure 13.11: circle and ellipse arcs

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (-1,1) parabola bend (0,0)
      .. (2,4);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

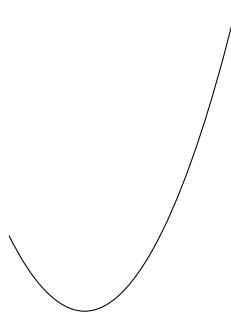


Figure 13.12: parabola arc

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (-1,1) parabola bend (0,0)
      .. (2,4);
\filldraw
(-1,1) circle (.05)
( 0,0) circle (.05)
( 1,1) circle (.05)
( 2,4) circle (.05);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

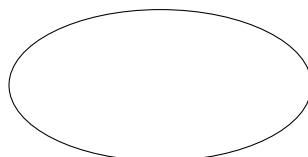


Figure 13.13: parabola arc with points

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw [step=20pt] (0,0) grid (3,2);
\draw [help lines ,step=20pt] (4,0)
      grid (7,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

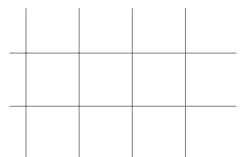
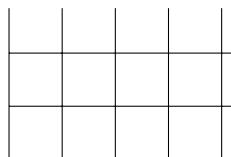


Figure 13.14: grid and help lines

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[scale=0.25]
\draw[->] (0,0)--(9,0);
\draw[<-] (0,1)--(9,1);
\draw[<->] (0,2)--(9,2);
\draw[>->>] (0,3)--(9,3);
\draw[|->|] (0,4)--(9,4);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

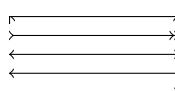


Figure 13.15: arrows

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[line width =2pt] (0,6)--(9,6);
\draw[dotted] (0,5)--(9,5);
\draw[densely dotted] (0,4)--(9,4);
\draw[loosely dotted] (0,3)--(9,3);
\draw[dashed] (0,2)--(9,2);
\draw[densely dashed] (0,1)--(9,1);
\draw[loosely dashed] (0,0)--(9,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

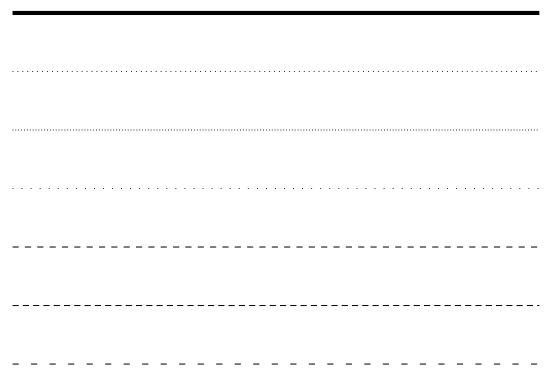


Figure 13.16: lines

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[dline/.style={color=blue, line width=2pt}]
\draw[dline] (0,0)--(9,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Figure 13.17: head styling

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
\draw[shift={(3, 0)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(0, 3)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(0,-3)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(-3, 0)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(3, 3)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(-3, 3)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(3,-3)}] (0,0)
\draw[shift={(-3,-3)}] (0,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

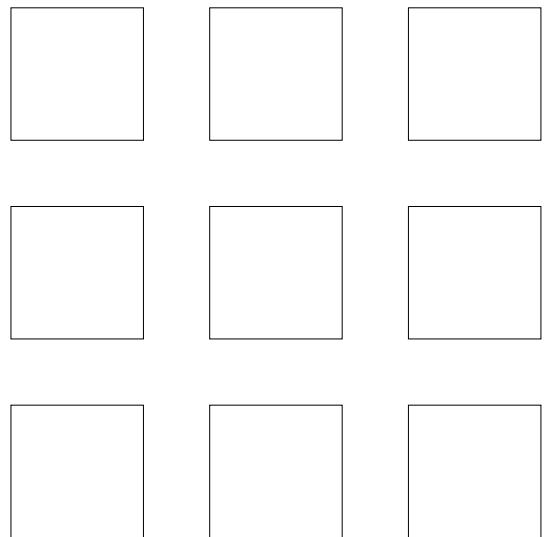


Figure 13.18: transform: shift

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift= 100pt] (0,0) rectangle
    (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=-100pt] (0,0) rectangle
    (2,2);
  \draw[yshift= 100pt] (0,0) rectangle
    (2,2);
  \draw[yshift=-100pt] (0,0) rectangle
    (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

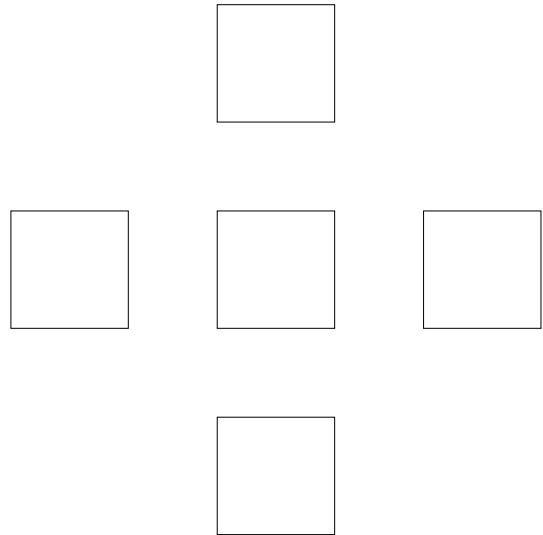


Figure 13.19: transform: shift x, y

---

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift= 100pt, xscale=1.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[yshift= 100pt, xscale=0.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=-100pt, yscale=1.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[yshift=-100pt, yscale=0.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

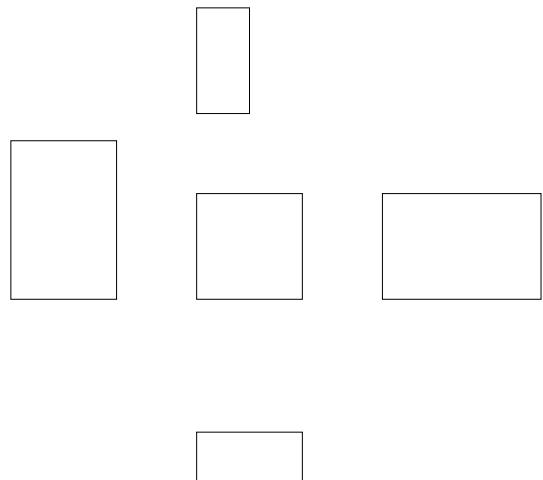


Figure 13.20: transform: scale x, y

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift= 100pt, xscale=1.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[yshift= 100pt, yscale=1.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=-100pt, xscale=0.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[yshift=-100pt, yscale=0.5]
    (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

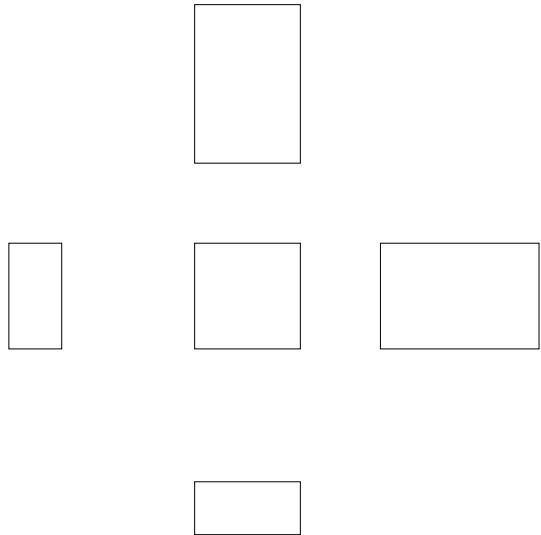


Figure 13.21: transform: scale

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=125pt,rotate=45] (0,0)
    rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=175pt,rotate
    around={45:(2 ,2)}] (0,0)
    rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

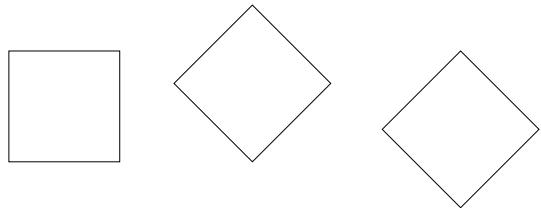


Figure 13.22: transform: rotate

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[xshift=70pt,xslant=1] (0,0)
    rectangle (2,2);
  \draw[yshift=70pt,yslant=1] (0,0)
    rectangle (2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

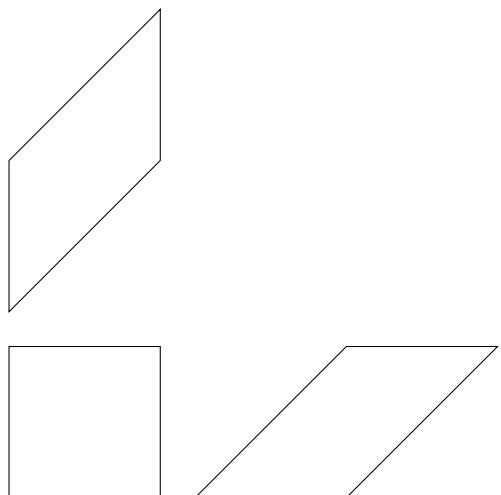


Figure 13.23: transform: slant

```
\tikzset{
  box/.style={
    draw=blue,
    rectangle,
    rounded corners=5pt,
    minimum width=50pt,
    minimum height=20pt,
    inner sep=5pt
  }
}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[box] (1) at (0,0) {1};
  \node[box] (2) at (4,0) {2};
  \node[box] (3) at (8,0) {3};
  \draw[->] (1)--(2);
  \draw[->] (2)--(3);
  \node at (2,1) {a};
  \node at (6,1) {b};
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Figure 13.24: flowchart

```
\tikzset{
  box/.style={
    draw=blue,
    fill=blue!20,
    rectangle,
    rounded corners=5pt,
    minimum height=20pt,
    inner sep=5pt
  }
}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[box] {1}
    child {node[box] {2}}
    child {node[box] {3}
      child {node[box] {4}}
      child {node[box] {5}}
      child {node[box] {6}}
    };
\end{tikzpicture}
```

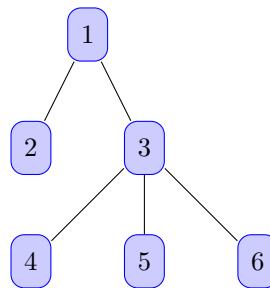


Figure 13.25: tree

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw[->] (-0.2,0)--(6,0)
  \node[right] {$x$};
  \draw[->] (0,-0.2)--(0,6)
  \node[above] {$f(x)$};
  \draw[domain=0:4] plot (\x ,{0.1*
    exp(\x)}) node[right]
  {$f(x) = \frac{1}{10}e^x$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

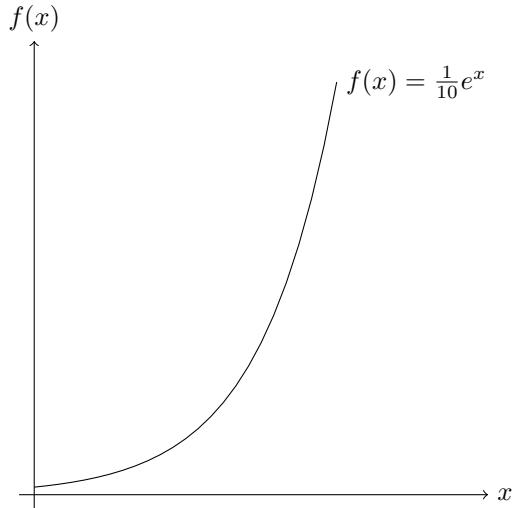


Figure 13.26: function plot

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/64897575/tikz-libraries-in-bookdown>

It turns out that you can simply put the `\usetikzlibrary{...}` command directly before the `\begin{tikzpicture}` and everything works fine :)

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/56211210/r-markdown-document-with-html-docx-output-using-latex-package-bbm>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/171711/how-to-include-latex-package-in-r-markdown>

## 13.2 3D

[https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/431732330?utm\\_psn=1741857547550638080](https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/431732330?utm_psn=1741857547550638080)

<https://github.com/RRWWW/Stereometry>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\coordinate (A) at ( 1, 1, 1);
\coordinate (B) at ( 1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (C) at ( 1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (D) at ( 1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (E) at (-1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (F) at (-1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (G) at (-1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (H) at (-1, 1, 1);
\draw (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$}--(B) node[right=1pt] {$B$}--(C) node[right=1pt] {$C$}--(D) node[right=1pt] {$D$}--(E) node[left= 1pt] {$E$}--(F) node[right=1pt] {$F$}--(G) node[right=1pt] {$G$}--(H) node[left= 1pt] {$H$}--(A) node[right=1pt] {$A$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

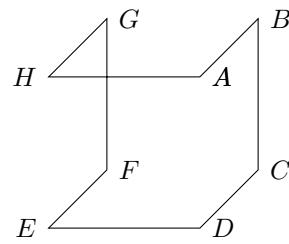


Figure 13.27: cube

---

```
\usetikzlibrary{patterns}
\usetikzlibrary{3d,calc}
\tdplotsetmaincoords{45}{45}
\begin{tikzpicture}[tdplot_main_coords]
\coordinate (A) at ( 1, 1, 1);
\coordinate (B) at ( 1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (C) at ( 1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (D) at ( 1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (E) at (-1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (F) at (-1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (G) at (-1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (H) at (-1, 1, 1);
\draw (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$}--(B) node[right=1pt] {$B$}--(C) node[right=1pt] {$C$}--(D) node[right=1pt] {$D$}--(E) node[left= 1pt] {$E$}--(F) node[right=1pt] {$F$}--(G) node[right=1pt] {$G$}--(H) node[left= 1pt] {$H$}--(A) node[right=1pt] {$A$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

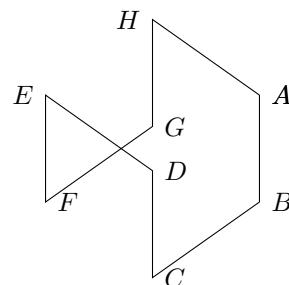


Figure 13.28: cube rotate

```
\usetikzlibrary{patterns}
\usetikzlibrary{3d,calc}
%\tdplotsetmaincoords{70}{110}
\begin{tikzpicture}[rotate around
→ y=-15, rotate around z=7]
\coordinate (A) at ( 1, 1, 1);
\coordinate (B) at ( 1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (C) at ( 1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (D) at ( 1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (E) at (-1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (F) at (-1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (G) at (-1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (H) at (-1, 1, 1);
\draw (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$}--
      (B) node[right=1pt] {$B$}--
      (C) node[right=1pt] {$C$}--
      (D) node[right=1pt] {$D$}--
      (E) node[left= 1pt] {$E$}--
      (F) node[right=1pt] {$F$}--
      (G) node[right=1pt] {$G$}--
      (H) node[left= 1pt] {$H$}--
      (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

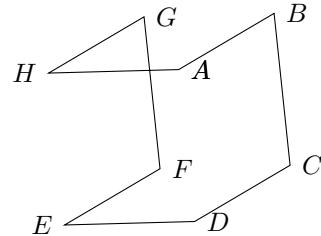


Figure 13.29: cube rotate around

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/388621/optimizing-perspective-tikz-graphic>

```
\usetikzlibrary{patterns}
\usetikzlibrary{3d,calc}
\begin{tikzpicture}[y={(.5cm,.7cm)}]
\coordinate (A) at ( 1, 1, 1);
\coordinate (B) at ( 1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (C) at ( 1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (D) at ( 1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (E) at (-1,-1, 1);
\coordinate (F) at (-1,-1,-1);
\coordinate (G) at (-1, 1,-1);
\coordinate (H) at (-1, 1, 1);
\draw (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$}--
      (B) node[right=1pt] {$B$}--
      (C) node[right=1pt] {$C$}--
      (D) node[right=1pt] {$D$}--
      (E) node[left= 1pt] {$E$}--
      (F) node[right=1pt] {$F$}--
      (G) node[right=1pt] {$G$}--
      (H) node[left= 1pt] {$H$}--
      (A) node[right=1pt] {$A$};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

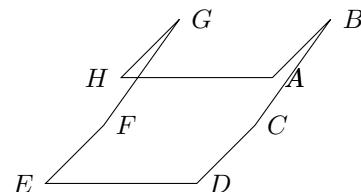


Figure 13.30: cube perspective slant

<https://github.com/XiangyunHuang/bookdown-broken/blob/master/index.Rmd>

```
\smartdiagramset{planet
  ↳ color=gray!40!white,
uniform color list=gray!40!white for
  ↳ 10 items}
\smartdiagram[bubble diagram]{Basic
  ↳ skills,
  Edit~/\\" (RStudio),
  Organize~/\\" (bookdown),
  Cooperate~/\\" (Git),
  Typeset~/\\" (LaTeX/Pandoc),
  Compile~/\\" (GitHub Action)}
```



Figure 13.31: modern statistics plot skills

### 13.3 plots of functions

<https://tikz.dev/tikz-plots>

A warning before we get started: If you are looking for an easy way to create a normal plot of a function with scientific axes, ignore this section and instead look at the `pgfplots` package or at the `datavisualization` command from Part VI.

<https://tikz.dev/tikz-plots#sec-22.5>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[domain=0:4]
  \draw[very thin,color=gray]
    (-0.1,-1.1) grid (3.9,3.9);
  \draw[->] (-0.2,0) -- (4.2,0)
    node[right] {$x$};
  \draw[->] (0,-1.2) -- (0,4.2)
    node[above] {$f(x)$};

  \draw[color=red] plot (\x,\x)
    node[right] {$f(x) = x$};
  % \x r means to convert '\x' from
  % degrees to _radians:
  \draw[color=blue] plot (\x,{sin(\x
    r)}) node[right] {$f(x) = \sin x$};
  \draw[color=orange] plot
    (\x,{0.05*exp(\x)}) node[right]
    {$f(x) = \frac{1}{20} e^x$};

\end{tikzpicture}
```

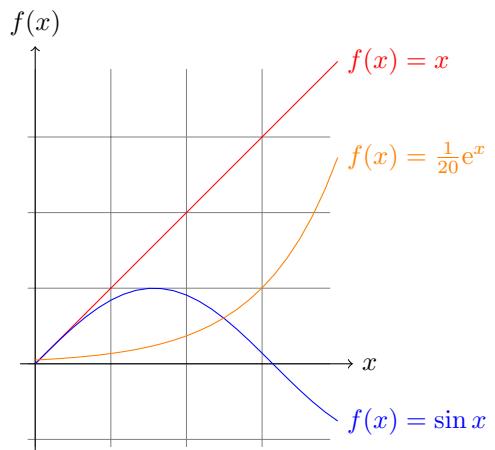


Figure 13.32: plots of functions

```
\tikz
\draw[scale=0.5,domain=-3.141:3.141,smooth,variable=\t]
plot ({\t*sin(\t r)},{\t*cos(\t
r)});
```

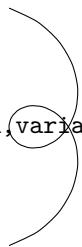


Figure 13.33: 2D parametric function

```
\tikz \draw [domain=0:360,
            smooth,
            variable=\t]
plot ({sin(\t)},\t/360,{cos(\t)});
```



Figure 13.34: 3D parametric function

## 13.4 PGFplots

axis similar to matplotlib figure anatomy, see Fig: 27.1

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/>

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/tutorial1>

Not so common is `\pgfplotsset{compat=1.5}`. A statement like this should always be used in order to (a) benefit from a more or less recent feature set and (b) avoid changes to your picture if you recompile it with a later version of pgfplots.

```
\pgfplotsset{width=7cm,compat=1.18}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
]
    % density of Normal distribution:
    \addplot [
        red,
        domain=-3e-3:3e-3,
        samples=201,
    ]
        {exp(-x^2 / (2e-3^2)) / (1e-3
        * sqrt(2*pi))};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

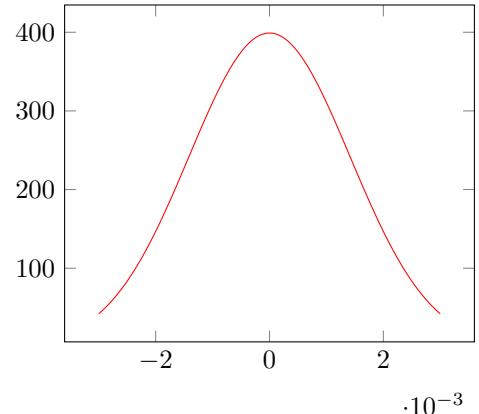


Figure 13.35: PGFplots: normal distribution

### 13.4.1 the axis environments

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-axis>

```
\pgfplotsset{every linear axis/.append style={...}}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
    no markers,
    axis x line = center,
    axis y line = center,
    xlabel = {$x$}, xlabel style
    ← = {right},
    ylabel = {$y$}, ylabel style
    ← = {above},
    xmin = -8, xmax = 8,
    ymin = 0, ymax = 0.45,
    hide obscured x ticks=false, %
    ← for origin x tick label i.e. xtick
    ← = {0}
    xtick={-4, 0, 4},
    xticklabels={$
    ← \mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 1} $,
    $%
    ← \mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 0} $,
    $%
    ← \mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 1} $,
    $},
    %extra x ticks={0},
    ytick = \emptyset,
    x = 1cm, y = 5cm, % x y
    ← scaling
    %grid = major,
    domain = -10:10,
    samples = 1000
  ]
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

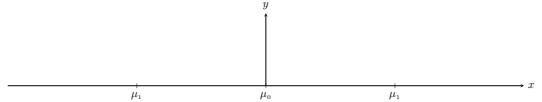


Figure 13.36: beginaxis

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/134959/axis-lines-middle-and-axis-lines-center>

No, there is no difference.

## 13.4.2 axis descriptions

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-axisdescription>

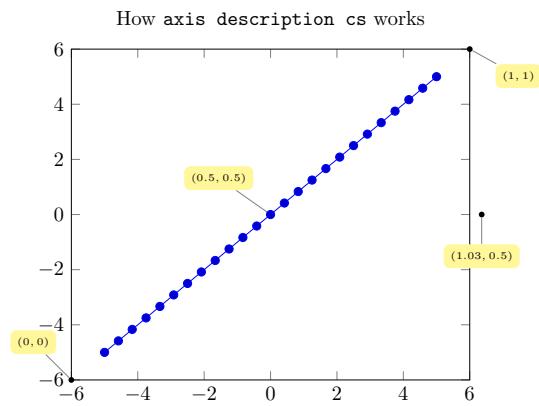
### 13.4.2.1 placement of axis descriptions

13.4.2.1.1 coordinate system axis description cs [https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-axisdescription#pgfp.axis\\_description\\_cs](https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-axisdescription#pgfp.axis_description_cs)

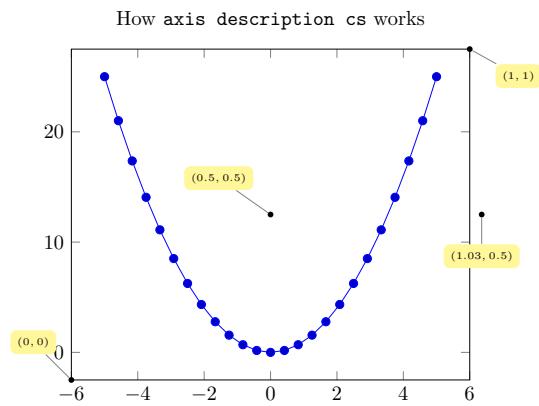
\addplot {x}; can change to \addplot {x^2}; still with auto blue dots

small dot style,pin=angle:LaTeX label at PGFplots axis coordinate system ;

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tikzset{
    every
    pin/.style={fill=yellow!50!white,rectangle,rounded
    corners=3pt,font=\tiny},
    small
    dot/.style={fill=black,circle,scale=0.3},
  }
  \begin{axis}[
    clip=false,
    title=How \texttt{axis
description cs} works,
]
    \addplot {x};
    %small dot
    \style, pin=angle:LaTeX
    label at PGFplots axis
    coordinate system ;
    \node [small
    dot,pin=120:{\$(0,0)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:0,0) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=-30:{\$(1,1)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:1,1) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=-90:{\$(1.03,0.5)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:1.03,0.5) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=125:{\$(0.5,0.5)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:0.5,0.5) {};
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.37: PGFplots:  $x$

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tikzset{
    every
    pin/.style={fill=yellow!50!white,rectangle,rounded
    corners=3pt,font=\tiny},
    small
    dot/.style={fill=black,circle,scale=0.3},
  }
  \begin{axis}[
    clip=false,
    title=How \texttt{axis
description cs} works,
]
    \addplot {x^2};
    %small dot
    \style, pin=angle:LaTeX
    \label at PGFplots axis
    coordinate system ;
    \node [small
    dot,pin=120:{\$(0,0)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:0,0) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=-30:{\$(1,1)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:1,1) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=-90:{\$(1.03,0.5)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:1.03,0.5) {};
    \node [small
    dot,pin=125:{\$(0.5,0.5)\$}]
    at (axis description
    cs:0.5,0.5) {};
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.38: PGFplots:  $x^2$ 

#### 13.4.2.1.2 legend <https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-axisdescription#sec-4.9.4>

#### 13.4.2.1.3 tick option <https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-tickoptions>

### 13.4.3 declare function

[https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/utility-commands#pgf/declare\\_function](https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/utility-commands#pgf/declare_function)

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    declare function={
        C=4;
        square(\t)=(\t)^2 + C;
    },
]
\addplot+ [samples=2] {C*x};
\addplot {square(x)};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

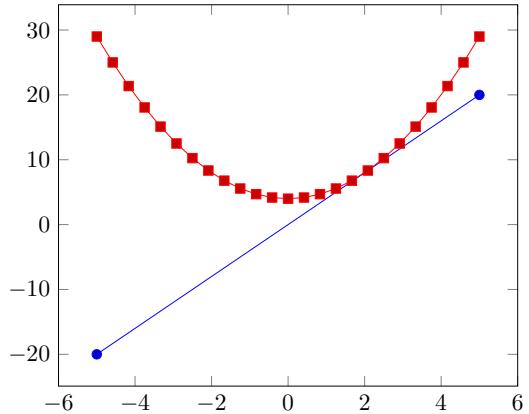


Figure 13.39: declare function

### 13.4.3.1 pgfmathparse

<https://tikz.dev/math-parsing>

<https://tikz.dev/math-parsing#sec-94.1>

This macro parses and returns the result without units in the macro 0.017. Example:  
`\pgfmathparse{2pt+3.5pt}` will set `\pgfmathresult` to the text 5.5.

```
\pgfmathsqrt{x} = \pgfmathparse{sqrt(x)}
\pgfmathln{x} = \pgfmathparse{ln(x)}
...
...
```

### 13.4.3.2 pgfmathdeclarefunction

like `pgfplotsinvokeforeach`

replaces any occurrence of #1 inside of (math image)command(math image) once for every element in (math image)list(math image). Thus, it actually assumes that (math image)command(math image) is like a `\newcommand` body.

```
% pgfmathdeclarefunction{name}{num_var}{%
%% #1 = \mu, #2 = \sigma
\pgfmathdeclarefunction{gauss}{2}{%
    \pgfmathparse{1/(\#2*sqrt(2*pi))*exp(-((x-\#1)^2)/(2*\#2^2))}%
}

% pgfmathdeclarefunction{name}{num_var}{%
%% #1 = \mu, #2 = \sigma
\pgfmathdeclarefunction{gauss}{2}{%
    \pgfmathparse{1/(\#2*sqrt(2*pi))*exp(-((x-\#1)^2)/(2*\#2^2))}%
}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    no markers,
```

```

axis x line = center,
axis y line = center,
xlabel = {$x$}, xlabel style = {right},
ylabel = {$y$}, ylabel style = {above},
xmin = -8, xmax = 8,
ymin = 0, ymax = 0.45,
hide obscured x ticks=false, % for origin x tick label i.e. xtick = {0}
xtick={-4, 0, 4},
xticklabels={$\mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 1}$, $\mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 0}$, $\mu_{\scriptscriptstyle 1}$},
%extra x ticks={0},
ytick = \emptyset,
x = 1cm, y = 5cm, % x y scaling
%grid = major,
domain = -10:10,
samples = 1000
]
\addplot [fill=cyan!20, draw=none, domain=-10:-2] {gauss(-4, 1)}
\closedcycle;
\addplot [fill=cyan!20, draw=none, domain= 2:10] {gauss( 4, 1)}
\closedcycle;
\addplot [very thick, cyan!50!black] {gauss(-4, 1)};
\addplot [very thick, cyan!50!black] {gauss( 0, 1)};
\addplot [very thick, cyan!50!black] {gauss( 4, 1)};
%\node [anchor=north] at (axis cs: 0, -0.01) {$\mu$};
%\node at (axis cs: -4, -0.02) {$\mu_1$};
\draw [dashed, thin] (axis cs: -4, 0) -- (axis cs: -4, 1);
\draw [dashed, thin] (axis cs: 4, 0) -- (axis cs: 4, 1);
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}

```

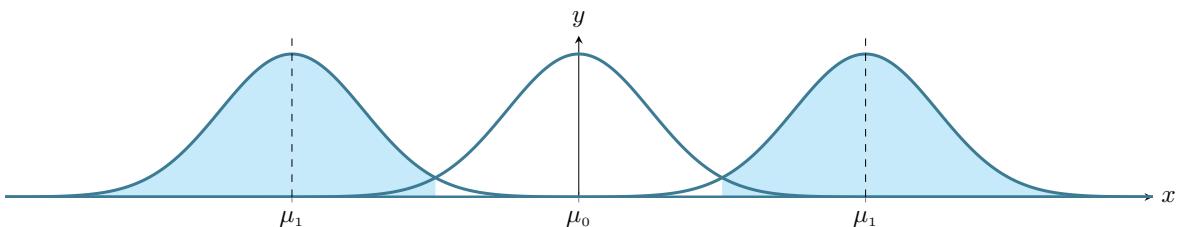


Figure 13.40: PGFmathDeclareFunction: normal distributions hypothesis testing

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/43610/plotting-bell-shaped-curve-in-tikz-pgf>

```

% pgfmathdeclarefunction{name}{num_var}{%
%% #1 = \mu, #2 = \sigma
\pgfmathdeclarefunction{gauss}{2}{%
\pgfmathparse{1/(\#2*sqrt(2*pi))*exp(-((x-\#1)^2)/(2*\#2^2))}%
}

```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    no markers, domain=0:10, samples=100,
    axis lines*=left, xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$,
    every axis y label/.style={at=(current axis.above origin), anchor=south},
    every axis x label/.style={at=(current axis.right of origin), anchor=west},
    height=5cm, width=12cm,
    xtick={4,6.5}, ytick=\emptyset,
    enlargelimits=false, clip=false, axis on top,
    grid = major
]
\addplot [fill=cyan!20, draw=none, domain=0:5.96] {gauss(6.5,1)} \closedcycle;
\addplot [very thick,cyan!50!black] {gauss(4,1)};
\addplot [very thick,cyan!50!black] {gauss(6.5,1)};
\draw [yshift=-0.6cm, latex-latex](axis cs:4,0) -- node [fill=white]
    {$1.96\sigma$} (axis cs:5.96,0);
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

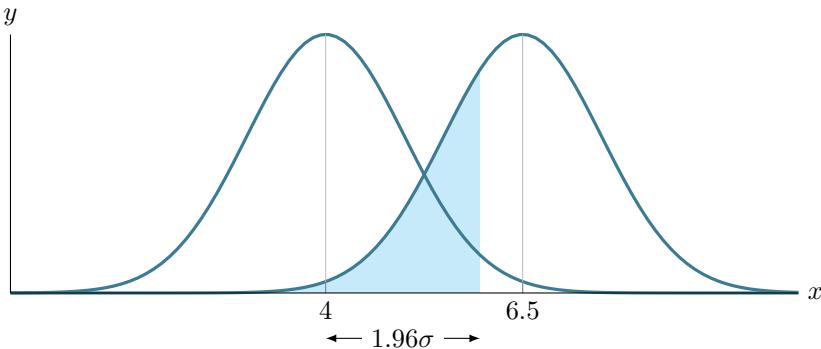


Figure 13.41: PGFmathDeclareFunction: normal distributions

### 13.4.4 |- and -| in TikZ

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/401425/tikz-what-exactly-does-the-the-notation-for-arrows-do>

( $a$  -|  $b$ ) where  $a$  and  $b$  are named nodes or coordinates. This means the coordinate that is at the y-coordinate of  $a$ , and x-coordinate of  $b$ . Similarly, ( $a$  |-  $b$ ) has the x-coordinate of  $a$  and y-coordinate of  $b$ .

### 13.4.5 pgfplotsinvokeforeach

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/pgfplotstable-miscellaneous#/pgfplotsinvokeforeach>

like \foreach in TikZ

A variant of \pgfplotsforeachungrouped (and such also of \foreach) which replaces any occurrence of #1 inside of (math image)command(math image) once for every element in

(math image)list(math image). Thus, it actually assumes that (math image)command(math image) is like a \newcommand body.

### 13.4.6 interpolation dashed lines

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/193259/what-is-the-easiest-way-to-accomplish-textual-tick-labels-in-tikz>

```
interpa = (10,10), interp = interpolation
({axis cs:0,0}|-interp#1) = (x of (0,0), y of (interpa)) = (0, 10), ...

\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis lines=left,
    xmin = 0, xmax = 40,
    ymin = 0, ymax = 40,
    xtick={10,30},
    xticklabels={\$V_i=10\$,\$V_f=30\$},
    ytick={10,30},
    yticklabels={\$P_i=10\$,\$P_f=30\$},
    xlabel={Volume},
    ylabel={Pressure}
]
\addplot[very thick,-latex ]
    coordinates{(10,10) (30,30)}
% interpa = (10,10), interp =
% (30,30), interp =
% interpolation
coordinate[at
start](interpa)coordinate[at
end](interp);
\pgfplotsinvokeforeach {a,b} {
    \draw[ultra thin, dashed]
        ({(axis cs:0,0}|-interp#1) = (x
        of (0,0), y of (interpa)) =
        (0, 10), ...
    ({axis
    cs:0,0}|-interp#1)--(interp#1)--(interp#1|-{axis
    cs:0,0});
}
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

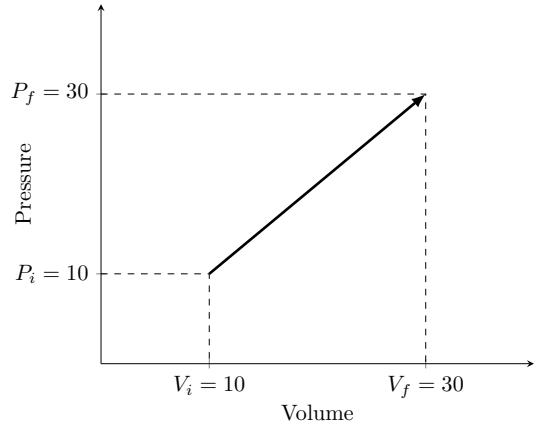


Figure 13.42: tick texts and interpolation dashed lines

### 13.4.7 Zewbie

<https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/551874337>

axis similar to matplotlib figure anatomy, see Fig: 27.1

### 13.4.7.1 coordinate axis/axes fine-tuing

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

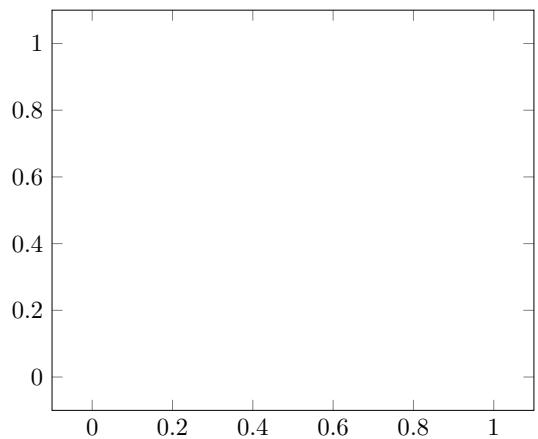


Figure 13.43: PGFplots: 2D axis/axes

#### 13.4.7.1.1 range

---

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
  xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
  ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

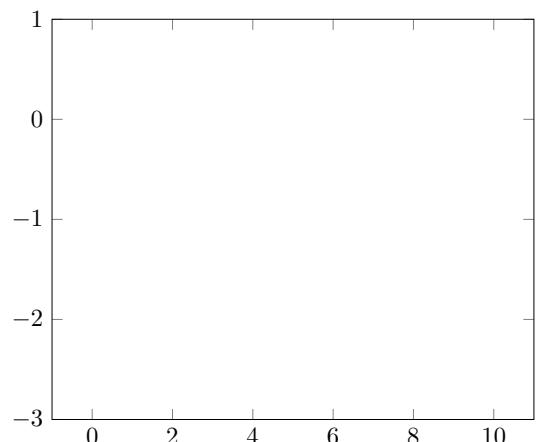


Figure 13.44: PGFplots: axis/axes range

#### 13.4.7.1.2 scaling axis equal image equivalent to unit vector ratio = {1 1 1}

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
    axis equal image, % unit
    vector ratio = {1 1 1},
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

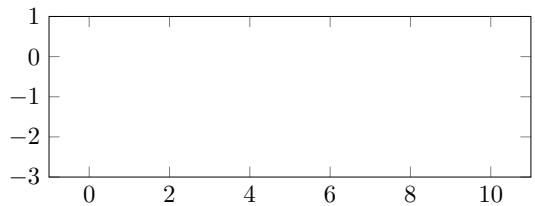


Figure 13.45: PGFplots: axis/axes range

scale only axis  
width x axis length, height y axis length

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
    scale only axis,
    width = 5cm, height = 7cm,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

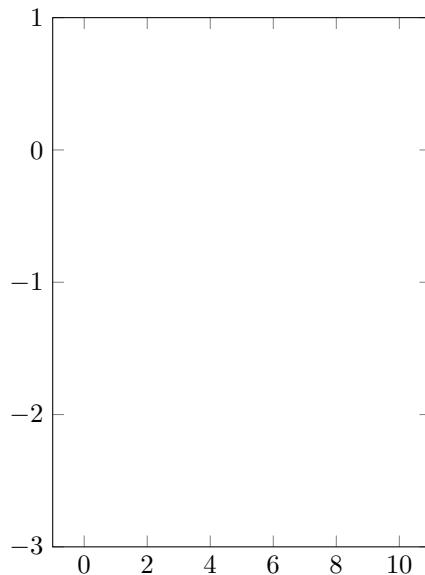


Figure 13.46: PGFplots: axis/axes range

x x unit vector length, y y unit vector length

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
    x = 1cm, y = 1cm,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

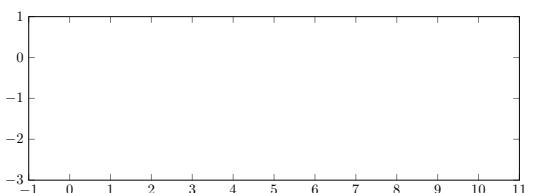


Figure 13.47: PGFplots: axis/axes range

### 13.4.7.1.3 direction vector

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
    x={(.2cm,-.1cm)},
    y={(=.5cm,.5cm)},
  ]
    % empty
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

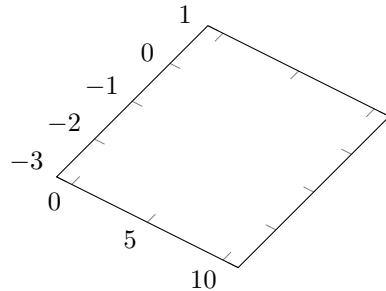


Figure 13.48: PGFplots: axis/axes range

```
unit vector ratio = {1 1}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
    unit vector ratio = {1 1},
  ]
    % empty
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

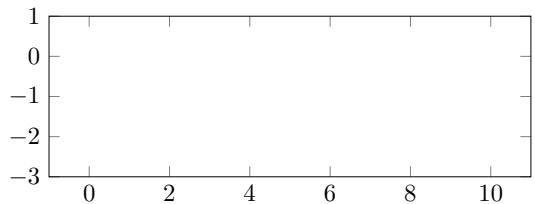


Figure 13.49: PGFplots: axis/axes range

**13.4.7.1.4 axis style axis lines** to assign all axes, either `axis lines = box`(default), `axis lines = center`(axis lines with arrows, `center`, `x: bottom, top, y:` ), or `axis lines = none`(not shown), or even axis lines without arrows `axis lines *= center`

`axis x line, axis y line` to assign the respect axis, e.g. `axis x line = center`

`axis lines = center:`

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
    axis lines = center,
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
  ]
    % empty
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

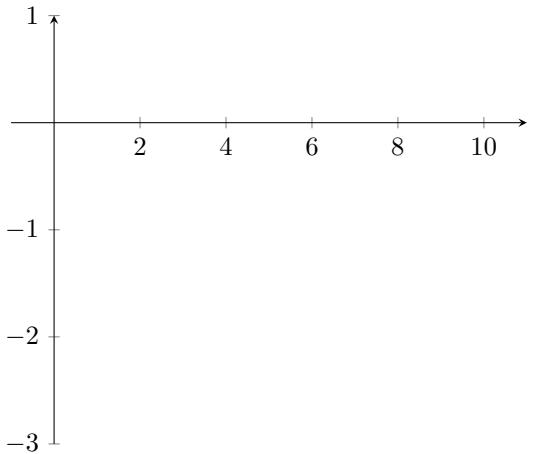


Figure 13.50: PGFplots: axis/axes range

`axis lines *= center:`

x axis line without arrow, y axis box

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
    axis x line*= center, % x
    axis line without arrow, y axis
    box
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
  ]
    % empty
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

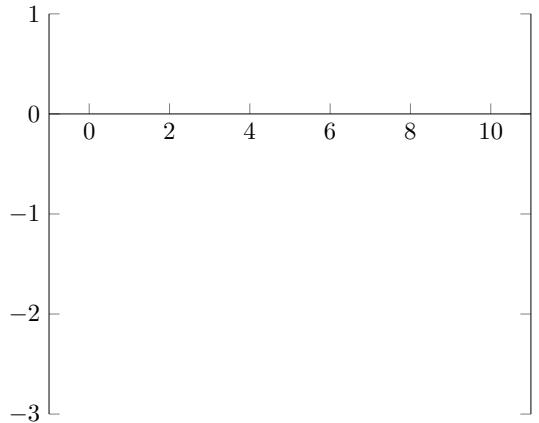


Figure 13.51: PGFplots: axis/axes range

---

x axis line with arrow, y axis line without arrow

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis x line = center, % x axis
    line with arrow
    axis y line* = center, % y
    axis line without arrow
    xmin = -1, xmax = 11,
    ymin = -3, ymax = 1,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

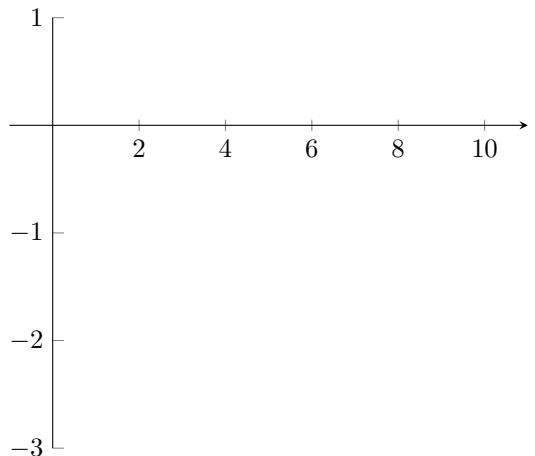


Figure 13.52: PGFplots: axis/axes range

#### 13.4.7.1.5 axis discontinuity crunch, parallel, none

crunch

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis x line = bottom,
    axis y line = center,
    xmin = -2, xmax = 10,
    ymin = 0, ymax = 12,
    axis y discontinuity = crunch,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

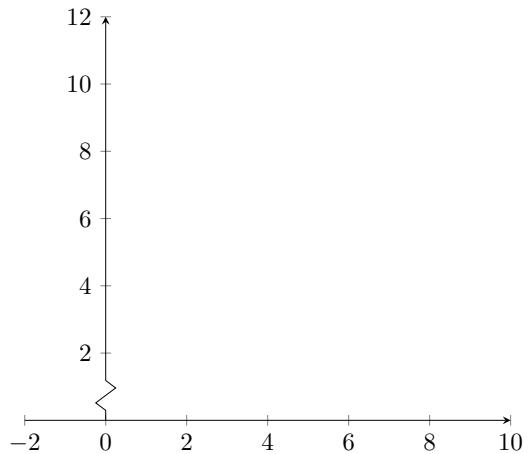


Figure 13.53: PGFplots: axis/axes range

---

parallel

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis x line = bottom,
    axis y line = center,
    xmin = -2, xmax = 10,
    ymin = 0, ymax = 12,
    axis y discontinuity =
→ parallel,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

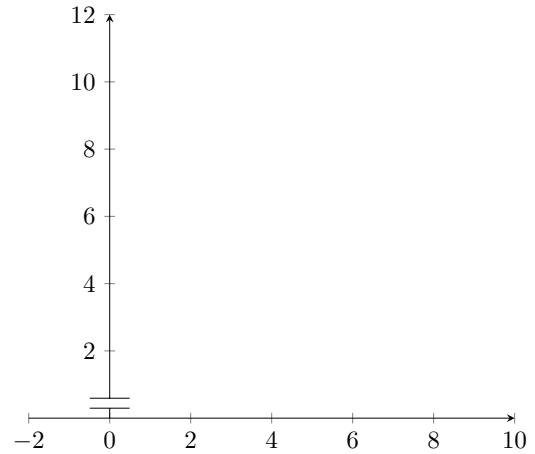


Figure 13.54: PGFplots: axis/axes range

#### 13.4.7.1.6 tick tick pos ticklabel pos

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xtick pos = upper,
    yticklabel pos = upper,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

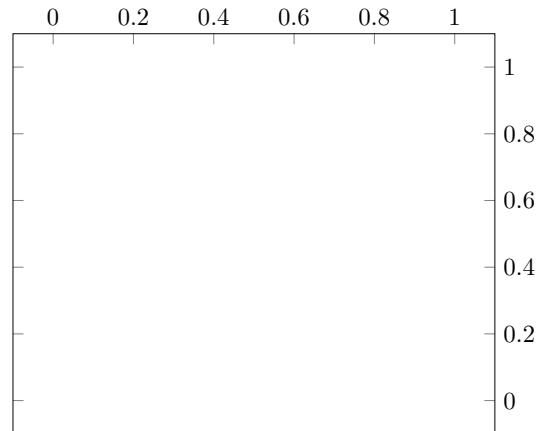


Figure 13.55: PGFplots: axis/axes range

---

tick distance

tick align: inside, center, outside

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis lines=center,
    xmin=-1,xmax=3,
    ymin=-3,ymax=3,
    xtick distance=.8,
    ytick distance=1.1,
    tick align=inside,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

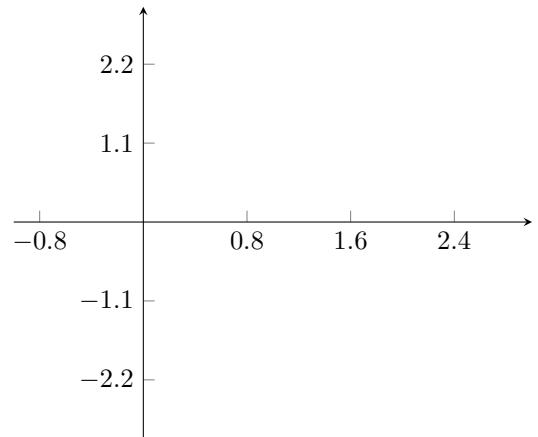


Figure 13.56: PGFplots: axis/axes range

---

minor tick num

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis y line=none,axis x
    ← line=center,
    ymin=0,ymax=0,xmin=-3,xmax=3,
    xtick distance=2,tick
    ← align=inside,
    minor tick num=2,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

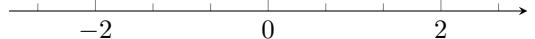


Figure 13.57: PGFplots: axis/axes range

---

xtick=\emptyset|data|{\<coordinates>}

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis y line=none, axis x
    line=center,
    ymin=0, ymax=0, xmin=-3, xmax=3,
    xtick={-2.5,0,1}, minor
    xtick={1/3,2/3},
    tick align=inside,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

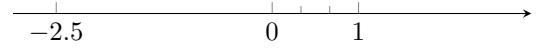


Figure 13.58: PGFplots: axis/axes range

extra x ticks=<coordinates>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis y line=none, axis x
    line=center,
    ymin=0, ymax=0, xmin=-2.3, xmax=4.9,
    xtick distance=2, minor tick
    num=1,
    extra x ticks={e,pi},
    extra x tick
    labels={$e$,$\pi$},
    tick align=inside,
]
% empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Figure 13.59: PGFplots: axis/axes range

ticklabels=<labels> extra x tick labels=<labels>

hide obscured x ticks = false for origin x tick label

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    axis y line=none, axis x
    ← line=center,
    ← ymin=0, ymax=0, xmin=-2.3*pi, xmax=2.3*pi,
    xtick distance=pi,
    ← xticklabels={-$-2\pi$,-$\pi$,$0$,$\pi$,$2\pi$},
    ] % empty
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

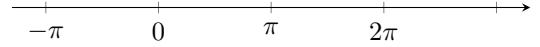


Figure 13.60: PGFplots: axis/axes range

### 13.4.7.2 addplot+

What does addplot+ do exactly?

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/275959/what-does-addplot-do-exactly>

<https://tikz.dev/pgfplots/reference-addplot#/addplot+>

Every `\addplot` directive receives a pre-defined style (line color, marker style etc) through a pre-defined cycle list that is automatically chosen depending on the index of the current `\addplot` instruction. If you want to add some of your styles manually (like I want red colour instead of blue, say), you can add them through options to `\addplot` like `\addplot [<your options>]`. Now the question is whether you want your own style (`your options`) to be appended to or replace one of these cycle lists assigned. This is decided by the `+` sign. If you use `\addplot+ [<your options>]`, your style is appended to and by `\addplot [<your options>]`, your options will replace the assigned cycle list.

### 13.4.7.3 point

`only marks` only points without lines

zero y axis range `ymin=0, ymax=0` and `axis y line=none`, making 1D x axis

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xlabel=$x$,
    axis y line=none,
    axis x line=center,
    tick align=inside,
    xmin=-1.5, xmax=4.9, ymin=0,
    ymax=0,
    xtick distance=1,
    x=1cm
]
\addplot+ coordinates {(e,0)}
    node [pin=90:{\$e\$}] {};
\addplot+ coordinates {(pi,0)}
    node [pin=90:{\$\\pi\$}] {};
\addplot+ coordinates
    {( -1,0)};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

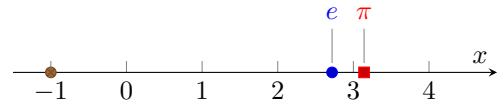


Figure 13.61: PGFplots: 1D points with pins

---

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$,
    axis lines=center,
    tick align=inside,
    xmin=-1.5, xmax=4.9,
    ymin=-3.3, ymax=3.9,
    xtick distance=1, ytick
    distance=1,
    axis equal image
]
\addplot+ [only marks]
    coordinates {
        (-1,-2) (pi,pi/4) (3,2)
        (0,0)};
\addplot+ coordinates {(2,1)};
\addplot+ coordinates
    {(3,-2)};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

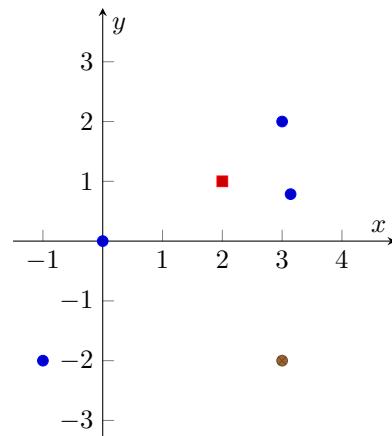


Figure 13.62: PGFplots: 2D points

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[axis equal image]
\addplot+ [only marks]
table [x=xdata,y=ydata]
→ {data/func.dat};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

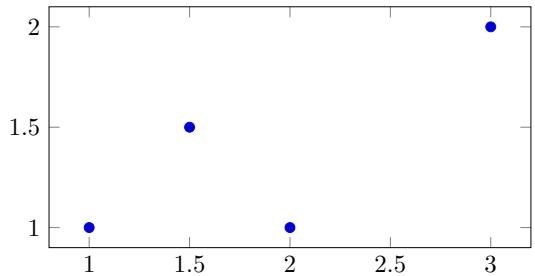


Figure 13.63: PGFplots: data points

`axis equal image` to fix aspect ratio 1:1

---

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[title=5 sampling
→ points,
xlabel=$x$,ylabel=$y$,
axis equal image]
\addplot+ [only
→ marks,domain=-2:2,samples=5]
{x^2};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

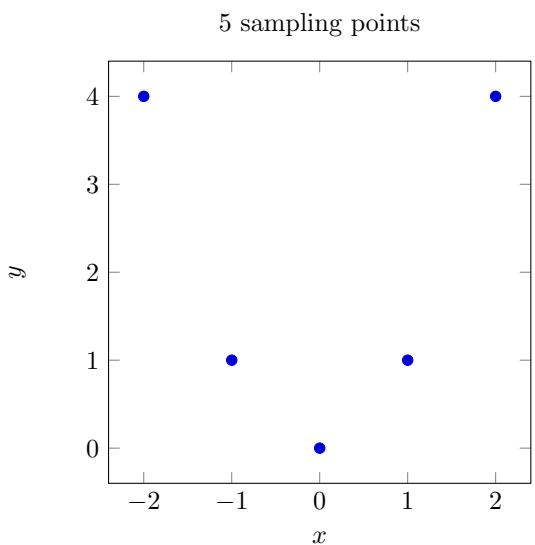


Figure 13.64: PGFplots: function sampling 5 points

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[title=55 sampling
points,
xlabel=$x$,ylabel=$y$,
axis equal image]
\addplot+ [only
marks,domain=-2:2,samples=55]
{x^2};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

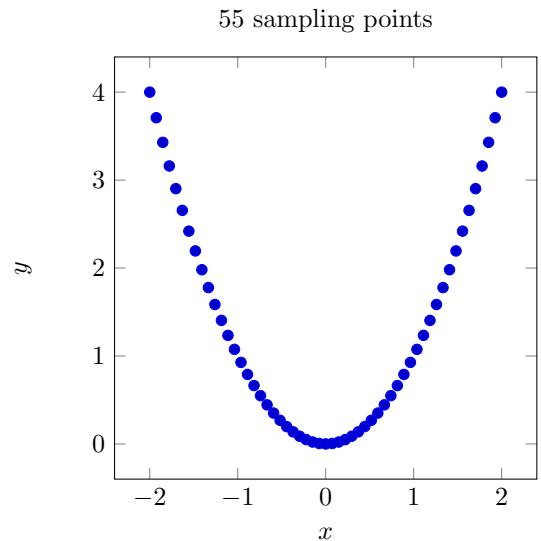


Figure 13.65: PGFplots: function sampling 55 points

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    trig format plots=rad, %
    angle in radian
    axis equal image]
\addplot+ [only
marks,variable=t,domain=0:pi*3/2,
samples=20]
({cos(t)},{sin(t)});
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

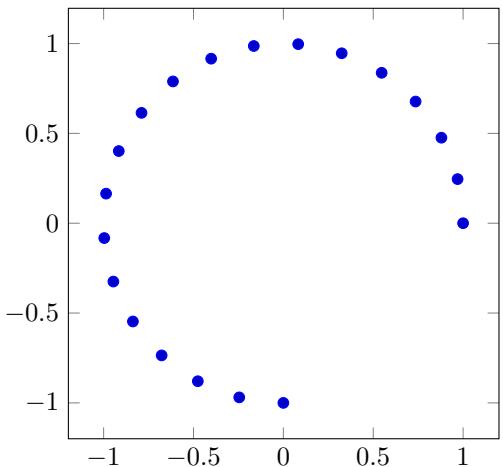


Figure 13.66: PGFplots: parametric function sampling

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xlabel=$x$,ylabel=$y$,zlabel=$z$,
    axis lines=center,
    tick align=inside,
    xmin=-1.5,xmax=3.9,
    ymin=-1.5,ymax=3.9,
    zmin=-0.5,zmax=3.9,
    xtick distance=1,
    ytick distance=1,
    ztick distance=1,
    % width=10cm,
    % scale only axis,
    view={120}{30}, % perspective
    angle
    axis equal image,]
\addplot3+
    coordinates{(1,0,0)};
\addplot3+
    coordinates{(0,1,0)};
\addplot3+
    coordinates{(0,0,1)};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Figure 13.67: PGFplots: 3D points

---

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xlabel=$x$,ylabel=$y$,zlabel=$z$,
    grid=major
    ]
\addplot3+ [only marks]
    {x^2+y^2};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

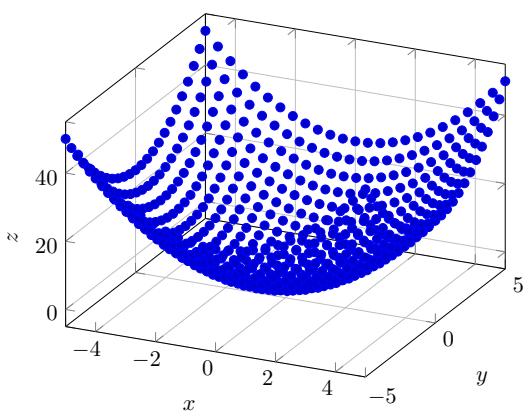


Figure 13.68: PGFplots: 3D function sampling points

### 13.4.7.4 line

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[ytick=data]
\addplot coordinates {
(1,0.15) (2,0.21) (3,0.33)
→ (4,0.4)
(2.5,.1) (3.5,.1)
};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

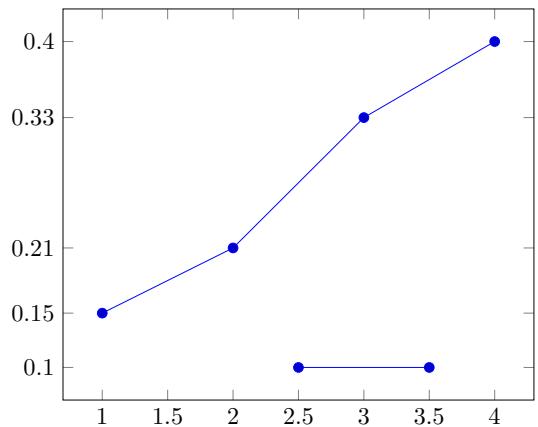


Figure 13.69: lines connecting adjacent points

---

`smooth` to make smooth curves or lines

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[ytick=data]
\addplot+ [smooth] coordinates
→ {
(1,0.15) (2,0.21) (3,0.33)
→ (4,0.4)};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

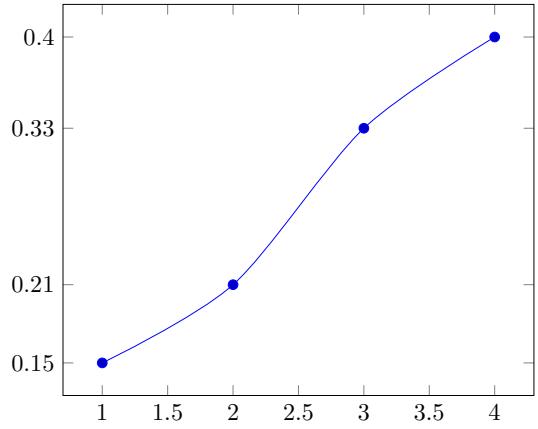


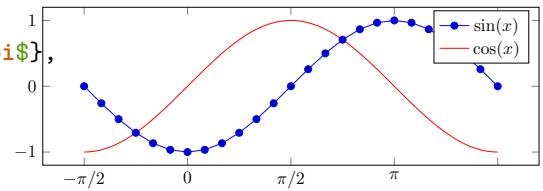
Figure 13.70: smooth lines connecting adjacent points

---

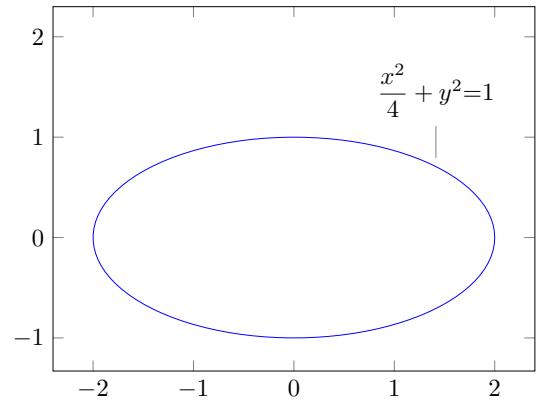
`no markers` to make no markers or points on the curves or lines

`\addlegendentry` to add legends

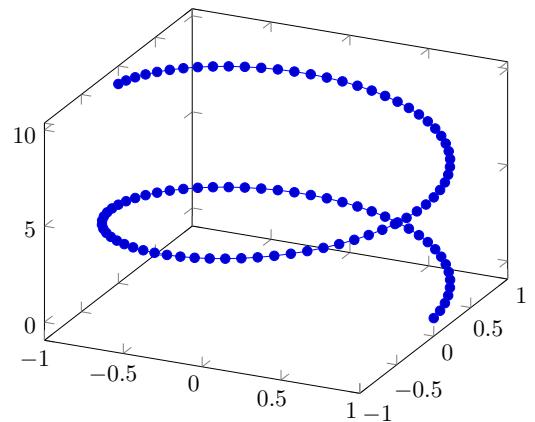
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    trig format plots=rad,
    xtick distance=pi/2, ytick
    distance=1,
    xticklabels={-$-\pi$,$-\pi/2$,0,$\pi/2$,$\pi$},
    width=10cm, scale only axis,
    axis equal image]
\addplot+ [domain=-pi:pi]
    {sin(x)};
\addlegendentry{$\sin(x)$}
\addplot+ [no
    markers,domain=-pi:pi,samples=100]
    {cos(x)};
\addlegendentry{$\cos(x)$}
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.71:  $\sin(x)$  and  $\cos(x)$ 

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    trig format plots=rad,
    ymax=2.3,
    axis equal image]
\addplot+ [no markers,
    variable=t,
    domain=0:2*pi,
    samples=100]
    ({2*cos(t)},{sin(t)});
\node
    [pin=90:$\frac{x^2}{4}+y^2=1$]
    at ({2*cos(45)},{sin(45)}) {};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.72:  $\frac{x^2}{4} + y^2 = 1$

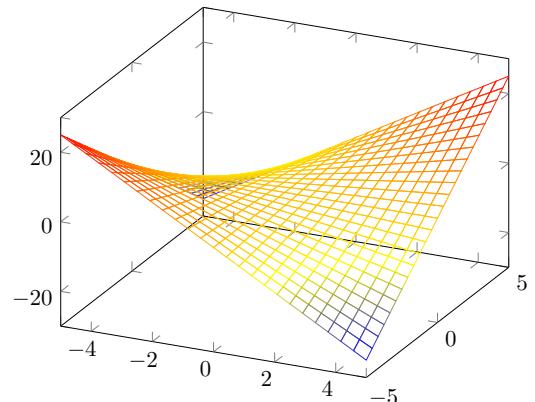
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[trig format
    ↵ plots=rad]
\addplot3+ [variable=t,
    domain=0:3*pi,
    samples=100,
    samples y=0]
    ({cos(t)},{sin(t)},{t});
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.73:  $(\cos(t), \sin(t), t)$ 

#### 13.4.7.5 plane

[mesh]

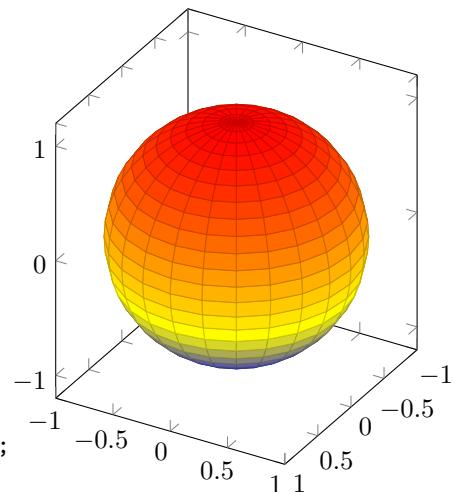
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}
\addplot3+ [no markers, mesh]
    ↵ {x*y};
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.74:  $f(x, y) = xy$ 


---

[surf] surface

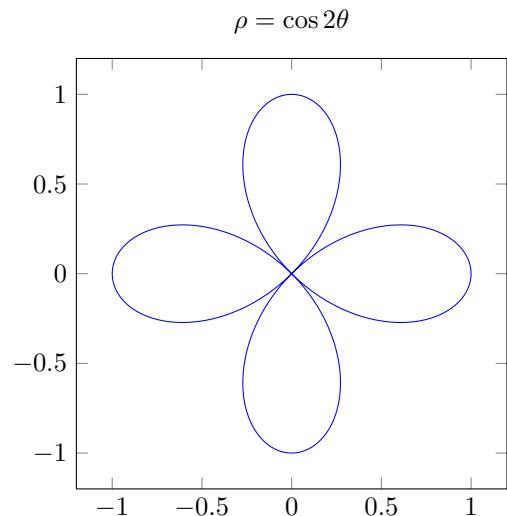
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    view={120}{30},
    trig format plots=rad,
    width=10cm,
    scale only axis,
    axis equal image
]
\addplot3+ [no markers,
            surf,
            domain=0:2*pi,
            domain y=0:pi]
    ({sin(y)*cos(x)},{sin(y)*sin(x)},{cos(y)});
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.75:  $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ 

#### 13.4.7.6 polar coordinate

```
data cs=polar|polarrad
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    title={$\rho=\cos 2\theta$},
    axis equal image
]
\addplot+ [no markers,
           data cs=polar,
           domain=0:360,
           samples=360
           ] (\x,{cos(2*\x)});
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Figure 13.76: polar coordinate  $\rho = \cos 2\theta$ 


---

\usepgfplotslibrary{polar} to use \begin{polaraxis}

```
\usepgfplotslibrary{polar}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{polaraxis}
    \addplot+ coordinates
      {(0,0) (60,1)
      \hookrightarrow (90,{sqrt(3)/2})} -- cycle;
  \end{polaraxis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

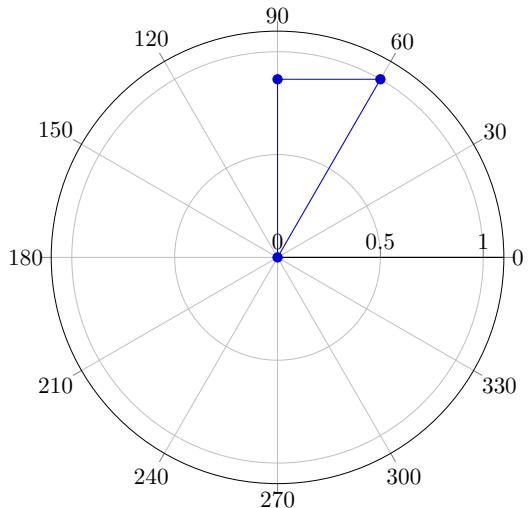


Figure 13.77: polar coordinate axes

<https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/128341873>

### 13.4.8 Arnav Bandekar: Using pgfplots to make economic graphs in LaTeX

<https://towardsdatascience.com/using-pgfplots-to-make-economic-graphs-in-latex-bcdc8e27c0eb>

### 13.4.9 PGFplots gallery

<https://pgfplots.sourceforge.net/gallery.html>

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{axis}[
    xmin=-3, xmax=3,
    ymin=-3, ymax=3,
    extra x ticks={-1,1},
    extra y ticks={-2,2},
    extra tick style={grid=major},
]
\draw[red] \pgfextra{
    \pgfpathellipse{\pgfplotspointaxisxy{0}{0}}
    {\pgfplotspointaxisdirectionxy{1}{0}}
    {\pgfplotspointaxisdirectionxy{0}{2}}
    % see also the documentation of
    % 'axis direction cs' which
    % allows a simpler way to draw
    % this ellipse
};
\draw[blue] \pgfextra{
    \pgfpathellipse{\pgfplotspointaxisxy{0}{0}}
    {\pgfplotspointaxisdirectionxy{1}{1}}
    {\pgfplotspointaxisdirectionxy{0}{2}}
};
\addplot [only marks,mark=*]
    coordinates { (0,0) };
\end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

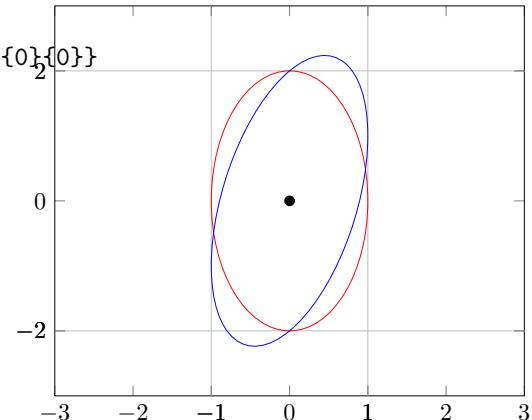


Figure 13.78: declare function

## 13.5 TikZplotLib / tikzplotlib

Python<sup>[12]</sup>

```
library(reticulate)

## Warning: package 'reticulate' was built under R version 4.2.3

# virtualenv_list()
# virtualenv_python()
# use_virtualenv("r-reticulate")

# conda_list()
use_condaenv(condaenv = 'sandbox-3.9')

## install TikZplotLib
# virtualenv_install("r-reticulate", "tikzplotlib")
```

```
## import TikZplotLib (it will be automatically discovered in "r-reticulate")
tikzplotlib <- import("tikzplotlib")
```

Error: ImportError: cannot import name 'common\_texification' from 'matplotlib.backends.bac

<https://github.com/NixOS/nixpkgs/issues/289305>

The “solution” is to use **matplotlib 3.6**, but I guess in nixpkgs a single version is used at a time. The last working upgrade is from 0911608 I guess (I tried using virtualenv + pip + nix-ld + export LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH=“LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH :NIX\_LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH”)

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/60882638/install-a-particular-version-of-python-package-in-a-virtualenv-created-with-reti>

```
#reticulate::virtualenv_install(packages = c("matplotlib==3.6.0"))
```

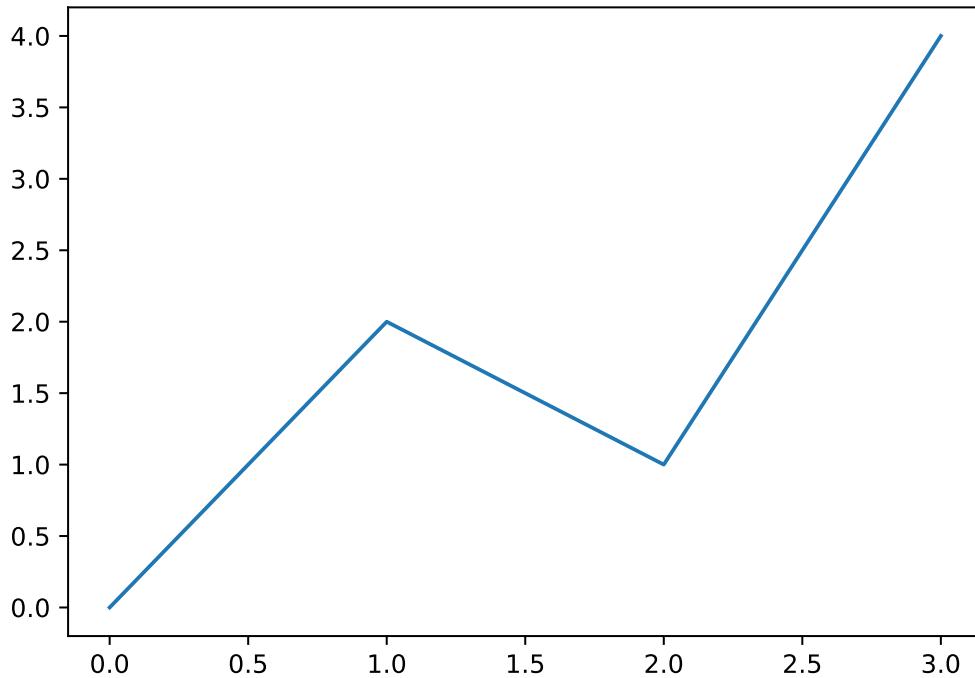
```
reticulate::conda_list()
```

```
##          name           python
## 1        base      D:\\Anaconda3\\python.exe
## 2    fiftyone      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\fiftyone\\python.exe
## 3       keras      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\keras\\python.exe
## 4     labelme      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\labelme\\python.exe
## 5      manim      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\manim\\python.exe
## 6     mmyolo      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\mmyolo\\python.exe
## 7   r-reticulate      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\r-reticulate\\python.exe
## 8 rsconnect-jupyter D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\rsconnect-jupyter\\python.exe
## 9      sandbox      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\sandbox\\python.exe
## 10     sandbox-3.9      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\sandbox-3.9\\python.exe
```

```
reticulate::use_condaenv(condaenv = 'sandbox-3.9')
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
```

```
plt.plot([0, 2, 1, 4])
plt.show()
```



```
import tikzplotlib

# tikzplotlib.save("test.tex")
tikzplotlib.get_tikz_code()

## '% This file was created with tikzplotlib v0.10.1.\n\\begin{tikzpicture}\n\n\\end{tikzpicture}
```

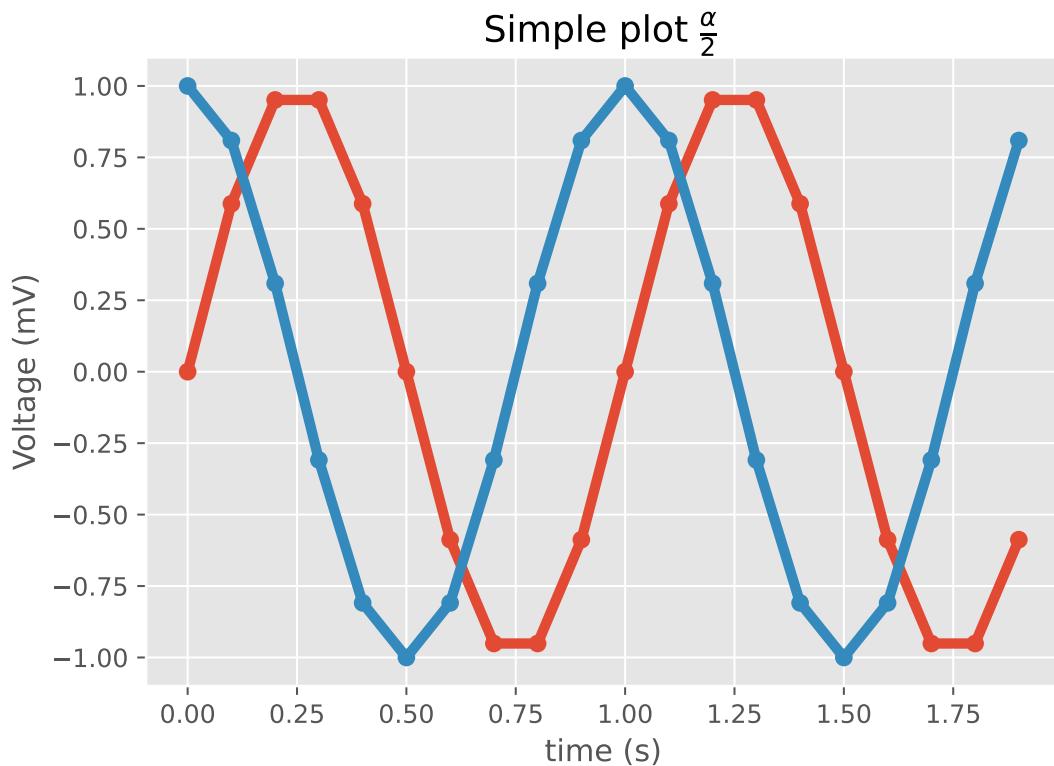
```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

plt.close()

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import numpy as np

plt.style.use("ggplot")

t = np.arange(0.0, 2.0, 0.1)
s = np.sin(2 * np.pi * t)
s2 = np.cos(2 * np.pi * t)
plt.plot(t, s, "o-", lw=4.1)
plt.plot(t, s2, "o-", lw=4.1)
plt.xlabel("time (s)")
plt.ylabel("Voltage (mV)")
plt.title("Simple plot $\\frac{\\alpha}{2}$")
plt.grid(True)
plt.show()
```



```
import tikzplotlib

# tikzplotlib.save("test.tex")
tikzplotlib.get_tikz_code()
```

```
## '% This file was created with tikzplotlib v0.10.1.\n\\begin{tikzpicture}\n\n\\end{tikzpicture}
```

## 13.6 animation

<https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/338402487>



# Chapter 14

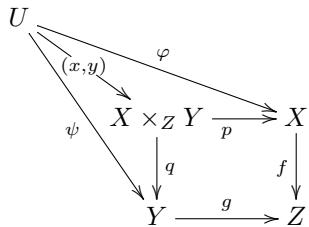
## xy-pic

<https://bookdown.org/yihui/rmarkdown-cookbook/install-latex-pkgs.html>

`tinytex::install_tinytex()`

the following xymatrix from LaTeX package xy for xy-pic is not shown or rendered in HTML:

`\$\\LaTeX$` can only be used in HTML, not PDF





# Chapter 15

## statistics



# Chapter 16

## covariance matrix

### 16.1 covariance matrix

6

#### 16.1.1 calculation

$$\begin{aligned} C[\mathbf{X}] &= \text{Cov}[\mathbf{X}] = V[\mathbf{X}] = E\left[(\mathbf{X} - E(\mathbf{X}))(\mathbf{X} - E(\mathbf{X}))^T\right] \\ &= E\left[(\mathbf{X} - E(\mathbf{X}))\left(\mathbf{X}^T - E(\mathbf{X})^T\right)\right] \\ &= E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T - E(\mathbf{X})\mathbf{X}^T - \mathbf{X}E(\mathbf{X})^T + E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T\right] \\ &= E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E\left[E(\mathbf{X})\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E\left[\mathbf{X}E(\mathbf{X})^T\right] + E\left[E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T\right] \\ &= E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E(\mathbf{X})E\left[\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E[\mathbf{X}]E(\mathbf{X})^T + E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T \\ &= E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T - E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T + E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T \\ &= E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{X} &= [X]_{1 \times 1} = X \Rightarrow C(X) = C[\mathbf{X}] = E\left[\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^T\right] - E(\mathbf{X})E(\mathbf{X})^T \\ &= E[XX] - E(X)E(X) \\ &= E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2 = V(X) \end{aligned}$$

#### 16.1.2 $V[\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] = V[\mathbf{X}]$

$$\begin{aligned} V[\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] &= E\left[((\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}) - E(\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}))((\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}) - E(\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}))^T\right] \\ &\stackrel{E(\mathbf{X}+\mathbf{b})=E(\mathbf{X})+\mathbf{b}}{=} E\left[(\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b} - E(\mathbf{X}) - \mathbf{b})(\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b} - E(\mathbf{X}) - \mathbf{b})^T\right] \\ &= E\left[(\mathbf{X} - E(\mathbf{X}))(\mathbf{X} - E(\mathbf{X}))^T\right] = V[\mathbf{X}] \end{aligned}$$

**16.1.3**  $\text{V}[A\mathbf{X}] = A\text{V}[\mathbf{X}]A^T$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{V}[A\mathbf{X}] &= \text{E} \left[ [(A\mathbf{X}) - \text{E}(A\mathbf{X})] [(A\mathbf{X}) - \text{E}(A\mathbf{X})]^T \right] \\ &\stackrel{\text{E}(A\mathbf{X}) = A\text{E}(\mathbf{X})}{=} \text{E} \left[ [A\mathbf{X} - A\text{E}(\mathbf{X})] [A\mathbf{X} - A\text{E}(\mathbf{X})]^T \right] \\ &= \text{E} \left[ A [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})] [A [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})]]^T \right] \\ &= \text{E} \left[ A [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})] [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})]^T A^T \right] \\ &= A\text{E} \left[ [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})] [\mathbf{X} - \text{E}(\mathbf{X})]^T \right] A^T = A\text{V}[\mathbf{X}]A^T\end{aligned}$$

**16.1.4**  $\text{V}[A\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] = A\text{V}[\mathbf{X}]A^T$

$$\text{V}[A\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{b}] = \text{V}[A\mathbf{X}] = A\text{V}[\mathbf{X}]A^T$$

## Chapter 17

# Gosper algorithm



# Chapter 18

## Lorentz transformation

### 18.1 Einstein

<https://wap.hillpublisher.com/UpFile/202204/20220414165340.pdf>

### 18.2 Bondi $k$ -calculus

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bondi\\_k-calculus](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bondi_k-calculus)

### 18.3 wordline in Minkowski space

#### 18.3.1 Wick rotation

<https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Wick+rotation>

##### 18.3.1.1 Osterwalder-Schrader reconstruction theorem

<https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Osterwalder-Schrader+theorem>



# Chapter 19

R

## 19.1 TonyKuoYJ

郭耀仁 認識 R 的美好

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/getting-started.html>

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/easy-installation.html#about-packages>

```
install.packages()
```

```
library()
```

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/getting-started.html>

### 19.1.1 quick intro

Ctrl + Alt + I to insert a new code chunk in RStudio

Ctrl + Enter to run the current line

Ctrl + Shift + Enter to run the current chunk

```
R.version
```

```
##           -
## platform      x86_64-w64-mingw32
## arch         x86_64
## os            mingw32
## crt          ucrt
## system       x86_64, mingw32
## status
## major        4
## minor        2.1
## year         2022
## month        06
## day          23
## svn rev      82513
## language     R
## version.string R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23 ucrt)
```

```

## nickname      Funny-Looking Kid
a <- 23 # prime
a

## [1] 23

combine <- c(11, 13) # twin prime
combine

## [1] 11 13

# ?c
# help(c)

```

Ctrl + L to clean R console

path with slash / in R, differing backslash \ in M\$ Windows

### 19.1.1.1 function

```

add <- function(x, y) {
  return(x + y)
}

add(11, 13)

```

## [1] 24

$$BMI = \frac{BW \text{ [Kg]}}{BH \text{ [m]}^2}$$

```

get_bmi <- function (bw, bh) {
  return (bw/(bh/100)^2)
}

get_bmi(70, 170)

```

## [1] 24.22145

### 19.1.2 R style

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/styleguide.html>

snake\_case rather than camelCase

### 19.1.3 data workflow or forward pipe

from *chaining method* in *object-oriented programming* to **functional programming**

#### 19.1.3.1 %>% operator

```
abs(-5:5)
```

```

## [1] 5 4 3 2 1 0 1 2 3 4 5
# install.packages("magrittr")

library(magrittr)

##
## Attaching package: 'magrittr'
## The following object is masked _by_ '.GlobalEnv':
##       add
-5:5 %>% abs()

## [1] 5 4 3 2 1 0 1 2 3 4 5

# with readability but too many lines
sys_date <- Sys.Date()
sys_date_yr <- format(sys_date, format = "%Y")
sys_date_num <- as.numeric(sys_date_yr)
sys_date_num

## [1] 2024

# less line but also less readability
sys_date_num <- as.numeric(format(Sys.Date(), format = "%Y"))
sys_date_num

## [1] 2024

# use %>% operator to demonstrate data workflow or forward pipe
sys_date_num <- Sys.Date() %>%
  format(format = "%Y") %>%
  as.numeric()
sys_date_num

## [1] 2024

```

#### 19.1.4 data processing with dplyr

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/dplyr.html>

some functions functioning like those in **SQL**

```

library(dplyr)

## Warning: package 'dplyr' was built under R version 4.2.3
##
## Attaching package: 'dplyr'
## The following objects are masked from 'package:stats':
##       filter, lag
## The following objects are masked from 'package:base':

```

```

##  

##      intersect, setdiff, setequal, union  

# install.packages("gapminder")  

library(gapminder)  
  

## Warning: package 'gapminder' was built under R version 4.2.3  

head(gapminder)  
  

## # A tibble: 6 x 6  

##   country   continent   year lifeExp     pop gdpPercap  

##   <fct>     <fct>     <int>   <dbl>   <int>     <dbl>  

## 1 Afghanistan Asia     1952    28.8  8425333    779.  

## 2 Afghanistan Asia     1957    30.3  9240934    821.  

## 3 Afghanistan Asia     1962    32.0  10267083   853.  

## 4 Afghanistan Asia     1967    34.0  11537966   836.  

## 5 Afghanistan Asia     1972    36.1  13079460   740.  

## 6 Afghanistan Asia     1977    38.4  14880372   786.  
  

library(gapminder)  

library(dplyr)  

library(magrittr)  
  

gapminder %>%  

  filter(year == 2007)  
  

## # A tibble: 142 x 6  

##   country   continent   year lifeExp     pop gdpPercap  

##   <fct>     <fct>     <int>   <dbl>   <int>     <dbl>  

## 1 Afghanistan Asia     2007    43.8  31889923    975.  

## 2 Albania     Europe    2007    76.4  3600523    5937.  

## 3 Algeria     Africa    2007    72.3  33333216   6223.  

## 4 Angola      Africa    2007    42.7  12420476   4797.  

## 5 Argentina   Americas  2007    75.3  40301927  12779.  

## 6 Australia   Oceania   2007    81.2  20434176  34435.  

## 7 Austria     Europe    2007    79.8  8199783  36126.  

## 8 Bahrain     Asia      2007    75.6  708573   29796.  

## 9 Bangladesh  Asia      2007    64.1  150448339  1391.  

## 10 Belgium    Europe   2007    79.4  10392226  33693.  

## # i 132 more rows  
  

library(gapminder)  

library(dplyr)  

library(magrittr)  
  

gapminder %>%  

  filter(year == 2007) %>%  

  select(country)  
  

## # A tibble: 142 x 1  

##   country  

##   <fct>

```

```

## 1 Afghanistan
## 2 Albania
## 3 Algeria
## 4 Angola
## 5 Argentina
## 6 Australia
## 7 Austria
## 8 Bahrain
## 9 Bangladesh
## 10 Belgium
## # i 132 more rows

library(gapminder)
library(dplyr)
library(magrittr)

gapminder %>%
  mutate(pop_in_thousands = pop / 1000)

## # A tibble: 1,704 x 7
##   country   continent year lifeExp      pop gdpPercap pop_in_thousands
##   <fct>     <fct>    <int>  <dbl>    <int>    <dbl>          <dbl>
## 1 Afghanistan Asia      1952    28.8  8425333    779.        8425.
## 2 Afghanistan Asia      1957    30.3  9240934    821.        9241.
## 3 Afghanistan Asia      1962    32.0  10267083   853.       10267.
## 4 Afghanistan Asia      1967    34.0  11537966   836.       11538.
## 5 Afghanistan Asia      1972    36.1  13079460   740.       13079.
## 6 Afghanistan Asia      1977    38.4  14880372   786.       14880.
## 7 Afghanistan Asia      1982    39.9  12881816   978.       12882.
## 8 Afghanistan Asia      1987    40.8  13867957   852.       13868.
## 9 Afghanistan Asia      1992    41.7  16317921   649.       16318.
## 10 Afghanistan Asia     1997    41.8  22227415   635.       22227.
## # i 1,694 more rows

library(gapminder)
library(dplyr)
library(magrittr)

gapminder %>%
  arrange(year)

## # A tibble: 1,704 x 6
##   country   continent year lifeExp      pop gdpPercap
##   <fct>     <fct>    <int>  <dbl>    <int>    <dbl>
## 1 Afghanistan Asia      1952    28.8  8425333    779.
## 2 Albania     Europe    1952    55.2  1282697   1601.
## 3 Algeria     Africa    1952    43.1  9279525   2449.
## 4 Angola      Africa    1952    30.0  4232095   3521.
## 5 Argentina   Americas  1952    62.5  17876956   5911.
## 6 Australia   Oceania   1952    69.1  8691212  10040.
## 7 Austria     Europe    1952    66.8  6927772   6137.
## 8 Bahrain     Asia      1952    50.9  120447    9867.
## 9 Bangladesh  Asia      1952    37.5  46886859   684.

```

```
## 10 Belgium      Europe      1952     68     8730405     8343.
## # i 1,694 more rows
```

total population in the world in 2007

```
library(gapminder)
library(dplyr)
library(magrittr)

gapminder %>%
  filter(year == 2007) %>%
  summarise(ttl_pop = sum(as.numeric(pop)))
```

```
## # A tibble: 1 x 1
##       ttl_pop
##   <dbl>
## 1 6251013179
```

total population group by the continents in 2007

```
library(gapminder)
library(dplyr)
library(magrittr)

gapminder %>%
  filter(year == 2007) %>%
  group_by(continent) %>%
  summarise(ttl_pop = sum(as.numeric(pop)))
```

```
## # A tibble: 5 x 2
##   continent    ttl_pop
##   <fct>        <dbl>
## 1 Africa      929539692
## 2 Americas    898871184
## 3 Asia        3811953827
## 4 Europe      586098529
## 5 Oceania     24549947
```

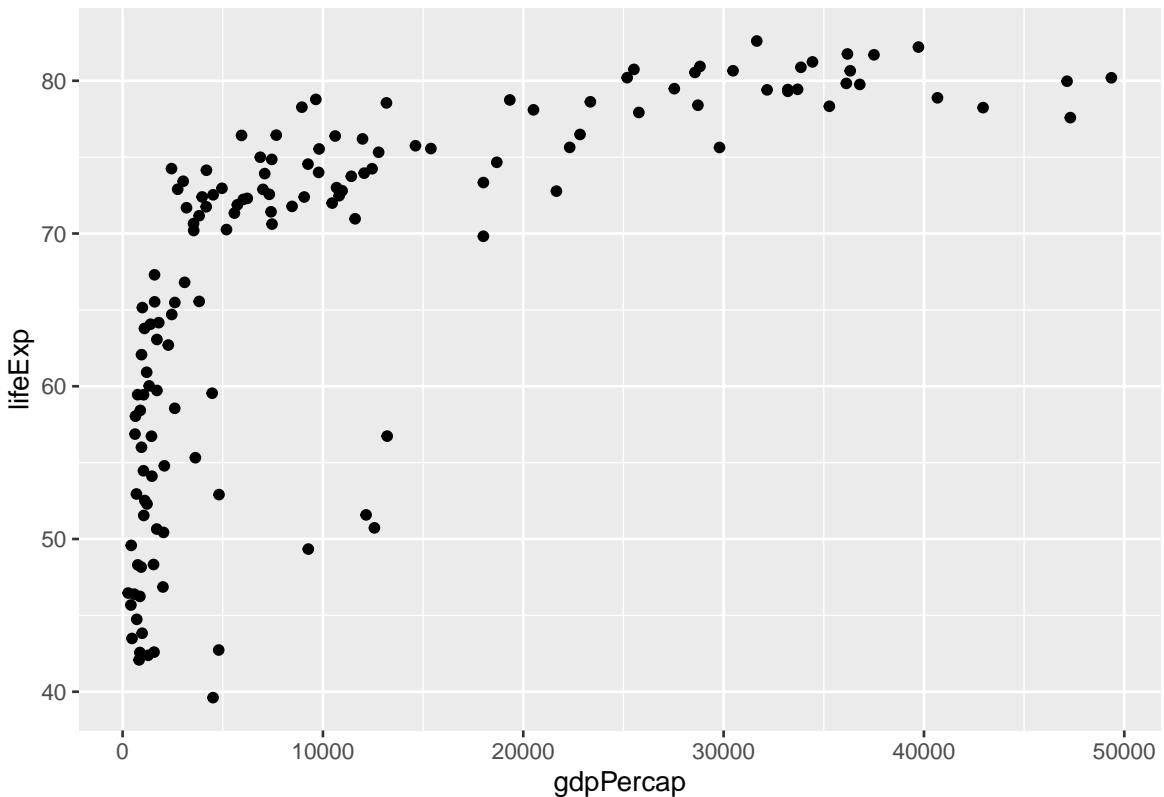
### 19.1.5 visualization statically with ggplot2

```
library(ggplot2)

## Warning: package 'ggplot2' was built under R version 4.2.3

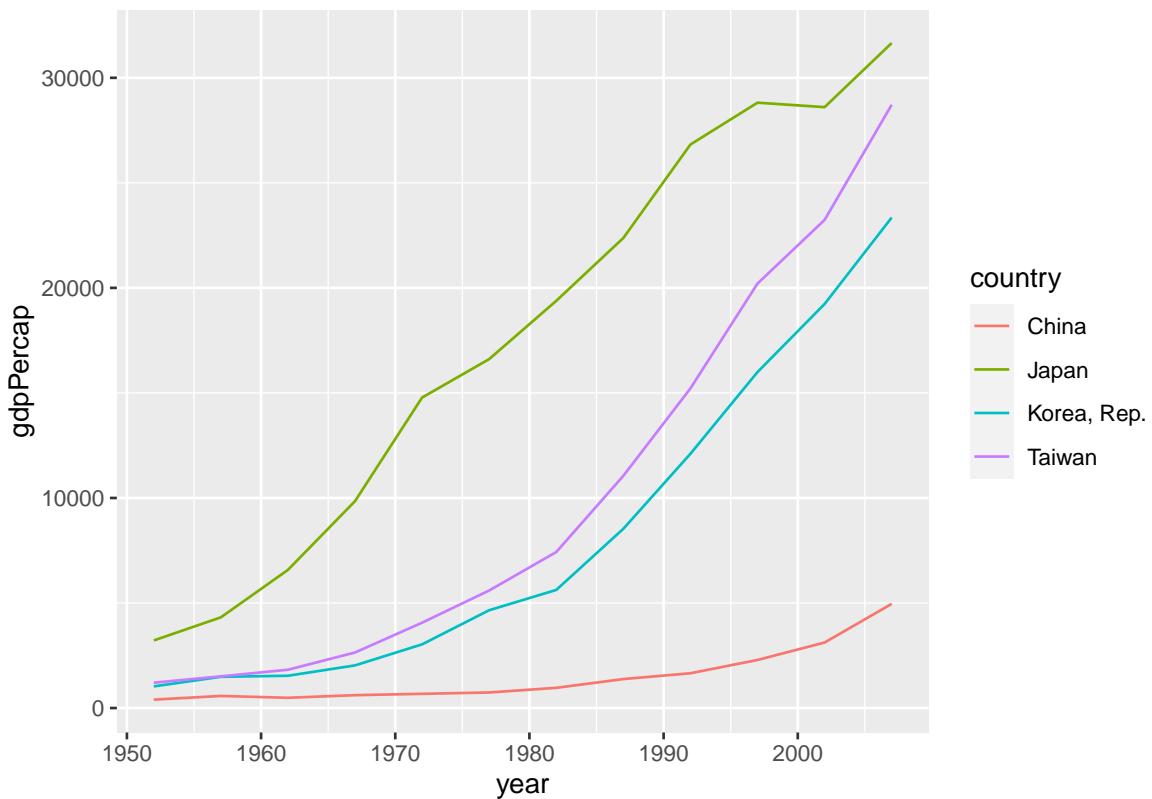
library(gapminder)

gapminder_2007 <- gapminder %>%
  filter(year == 2007)
scatter_plot <- ggplot(gapminder_2007, aes(x = gdpPercap, y = lifeExp)) +
  geom_point()
scatter_plot
```



```
library(ggplot2)
library(gapminder)

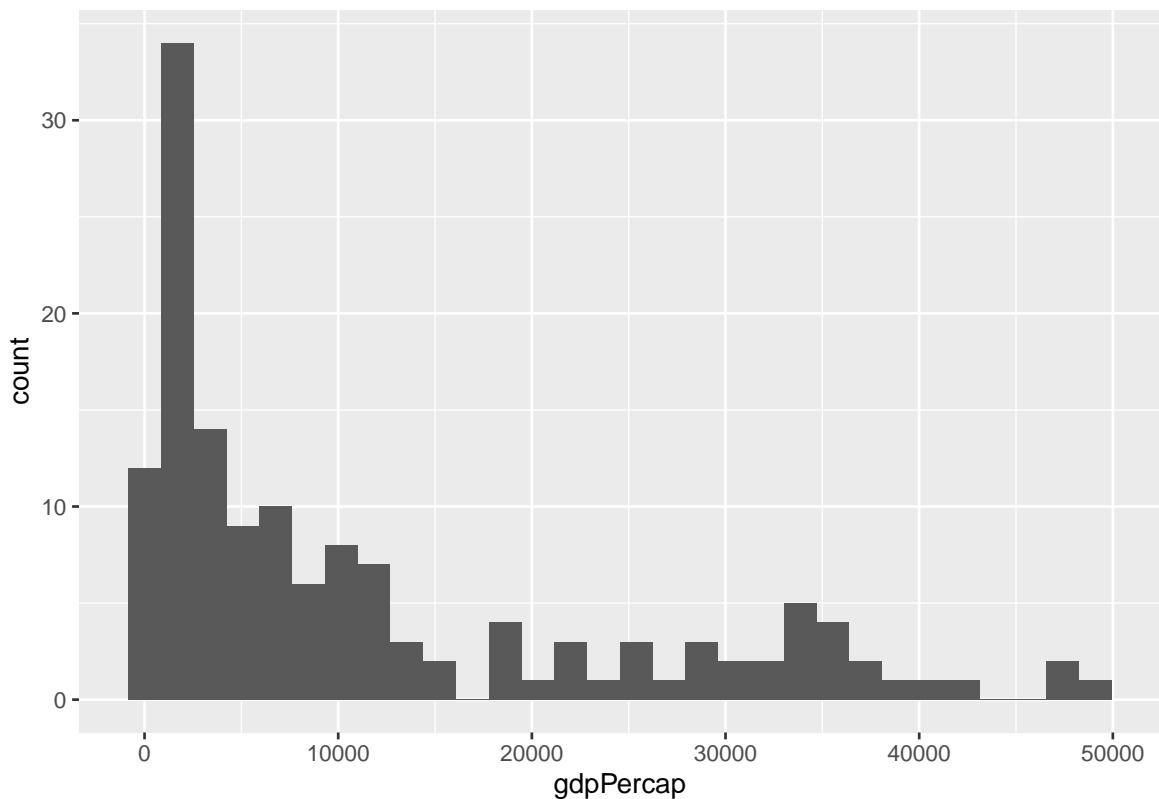
north_asia <- gapminder %>%
  filter(country %in% c("China", "Japan", "Taiwan", "Korea, Rep."))
line_plot <- ggplot(north_asia, aes(x = year, y = gdpPercap, colour = country)) +
  geom_line()
line_plot
```



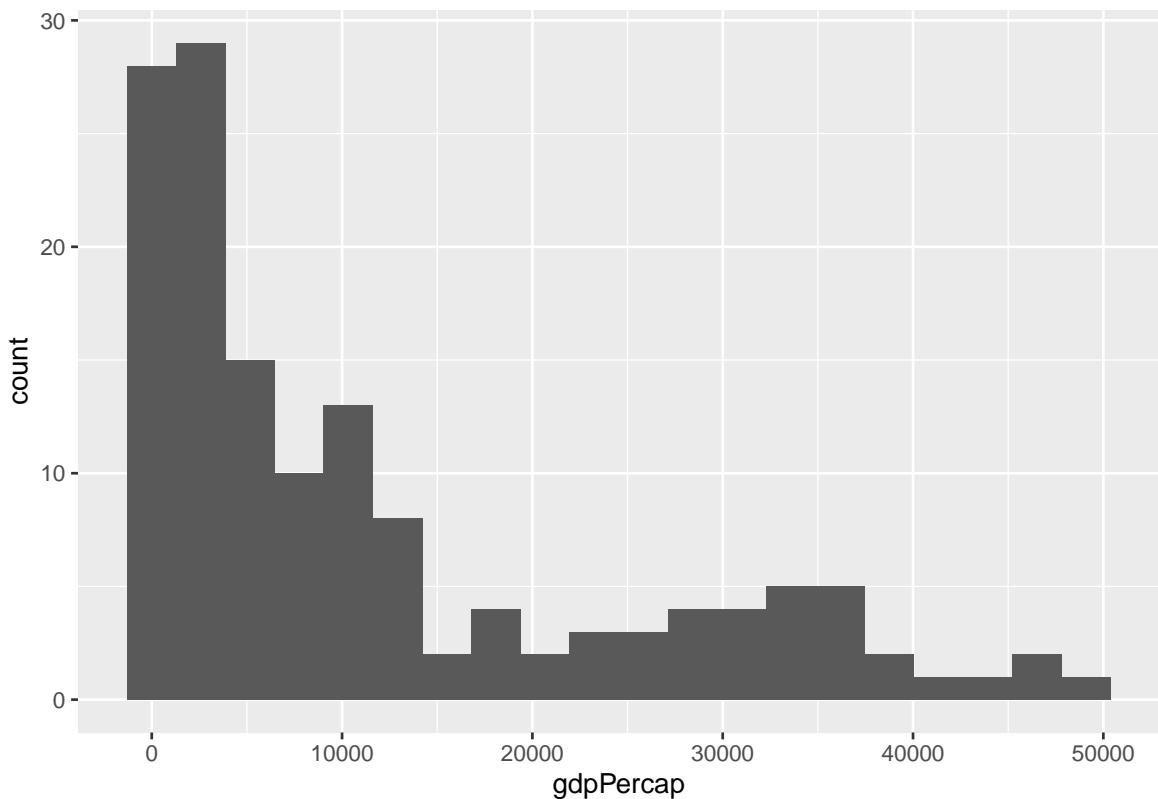
```
library(ggplot2)
library(gapminder)

hist_plot <- ggplot(gapminder_2007, aes(x = gdpPerCap)) +
  geom_histogram()
hist_plot
```

```
## `stat_bin()` using `bins = 30`. Pick better value with `binwidth`.
```

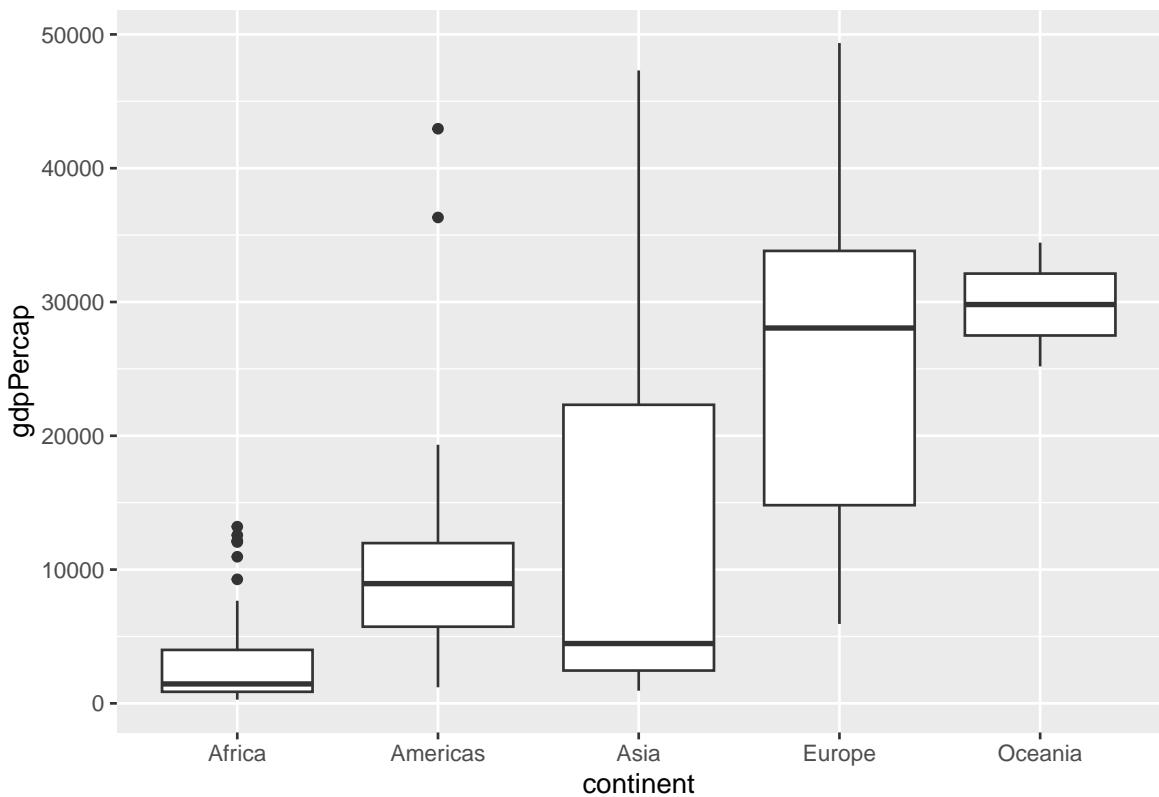


```
hist_plot <- ggplot(gapminder_2007, aes(x = gdpPercap)) +  
  geom_histogram(bins = 20)  
hist_plot
```



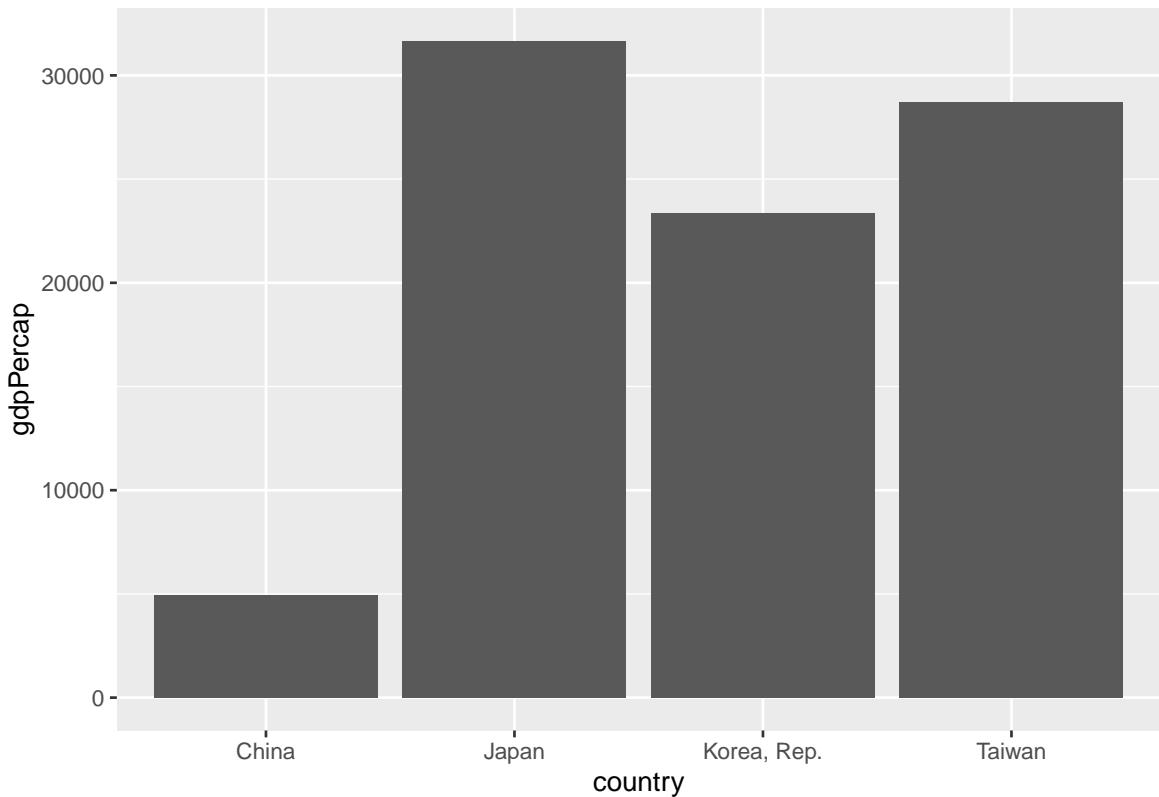
```
library(ggplot2)
library(gapminder)

box_plot <- ggplot(gapminder_2007, aes(x = continent, y = gdpPercap)) +
  geom_boxplot()
box_plot
```



```
library(ggplot2)
library(gapminder)

gdpPercap_2007_na <- gapminder %>%
  filter(year == 2007 & country %in% c("China", "Japan", "Taiwan", "Korea, Rep."))
bar_plot <- ggplot(gdpPercap_2007_na, aes(x = country, y = gdpPercap)) +
  geom_bar(stat = "identity")
bar_plot
```



### 19.1.6 loop

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/for.html>

```
month.name
```

```
## [1] "January"    "February"   "March"      "April"       "May"        "June"
## [7] "July"        "August"      "September"  "October"     "November"   "December"
```

```
month.name[1]
```

```
## [1] "January"
```

```
for (month in month.name) {
  print(month)
}
```

```
## [1] "January"
```

```
## [1] "February"
```

```
## [1] "March"
```

```
## [1] "April"
```

```
## [1] "May"
```

```
## [1] "June"
```

```
## [1] "July"
```

```
## [1] "August"
```

```
## [1] "September"
```

```
## [1] "October"
```

```
## [1] "November"
## [1] "December"
```

### 19.1.7 variable type

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/variable-types.html>

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_data\\_types.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_data_types.asp)

- numeric
- integer
- complex = complex number
- character
- logical = boolean

```
class(2L)
```

```
## [1] "integer"
```

```
class(2.0L)
```

```
## [1] "integer"
```

```
class(2.3L)
```

```
## [1] "numeric"
```

time: POSIXct POSIXt

```
class(Sys.time())
```

```
## [1] "POSIXct" "POSIXt"
```

```
0 %in% -5:5
```

```
## [1] TRUE
```

#### 19.1.7.1 date

1970-01-01 = 0L

```
date_of_origin <- as.Date("1970-01-01")
as.integer(date_of_origin)
```

```
## [1] 0
```

check if type of x is Date

```
inherits(x, what = "Date")
```

convert character to Date

```
as.Date("01-01-1970", format = "%m-%d-%Y")
```

#### 19.1.7.2 time

1970-01-01 00:00:00 GMT = 0L

tz = time zone

```
time_of_origin <- as.POSIXct("1970-01-01 00:00:00", tz = "GMT")
as.integer(time_of_origin)
```

```
## [1] 0
check if type of x is time
inherits(x, what = "POSIXct")
convert character to time
as.POSIXct("1970-01-01 00:00:00", tz = "GMT")
```

### 19.1.7.3 quotient %/% operator

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_operators.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_operators.asp)

```
7 %/% 3
```

```
## [1] 2
```

### 19.1.8 data type

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/vector-factor.html>

- 1D
  - `vector`<sup>[19.1.8.1]</sup>
  - `factor`<sup>[19.1.8.2]</sup>
- 2D
  - `matrix`<sup>[19.1.8.3]</sup>
  - `data frame`<sup>[19.1.8.4]</sup>
- $n$ D
  - `array`<sup>[19.2.6.1]</sup>
  - `list`<sup>[19.2.6.2]</sup>

#### 19.1.8.1 vector

```
four_seasons <- c("spring", "summer", "autumn", "winter")
four_seasons
```

```
## [1] "spring" "summer" "autumn" "winter"
```

```
favorite_season <- four_seasons[3]
favorite_season
```

```
## [1] "autumn"
```

```
favorite_seasons <- four_seasons[c(-2, -4)]
favorite_seasons
```

```
## [1] "spring" "autumn"
```

only one variable type for a vector

```
lucky_numbers <- c(7L, 24)
class(lucky_numbers[1])
```

```

## [1] "numeric"
lucky_numbers <- c(7L, FALSE)
lucky_numbers

## [1] 7 0

class(lucky_numbers[2])

## [1] "integer"
mixed_vars <- c(TRUE, 7L, 24, "spring")
mixed_vars

## [1] "TRUE"    "7"       "24"      "spring"
class(mixed_vars[1])

## [1] "character"
class(mixed_vars[2])

## [1] "character"
class(mixed_vars[3])

## [1] "character"

four_seasons <- c("spring", "summer", "autumn", "winter")
my_favorite_seasons <- four_seasons == "spring" | four_seasons == "autumn"
four_seasons[my_favorite_seasons]

```

#### 19.1.8.1.1 logic

```
## [1] "spring" "autumn"
```

```
rep(7L, times = 8)
```

#### 19.1.8.1.2 rep repeat

```
## [1] 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7
```

```
rep("R", times = 10)
```

```
## [1] "R" "R" "R" "R" "R" "R" "R" "R" "R" "R"
```

```
seq(from = 7, to = 77, by = 7)
```

#### 19.1.8.1.3 seq sequence

```
## [1] 7 14 21 28 35 42 49 56 63 70 77
```

```
11:20
```

```
## [1] 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
```

### 19.1.8.2 factor

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/vector-factor.html#factor>

```
four_seasons <- c("spring", "summer", "autumn", "winter")
four_seasons

## [1] "spring" "summer" "autumn" "winter"

four_seasons_factor <- factor(four_seasons)
four_seasons_factor

## [1] spring summer autumn winter
## Levels: autumn spring summer winter

four_seasons <- c("spring", "summer", "autumn", "winter")
four_seasons_factor <- factor(four_seasons, ordered = TRUE, levels = c("summer",
  ↪ "winter", "spring", "autumn"))
four_seasons_factor

## [1] spring summer autumn winter
## Levels: summer < winter < spring < autumn

temperatures <- c("warm", "hot", "cold")
temp_factors <- factor(temperatures, ordered = TRUE, levels = c("cold", "warm",
  ↪ "hot"))
temp_factors

## [1] warm hot cold
## Levels: cold < warm < hot

if no levels specified, the levels will be specified alphabetically, sometimes not really true

temperatures <- c("warm", "hot", "cold")
temp_factors <- factor(temperatures, ordered = TRUE)
temp_factors

## [1] warm hot cold
## Levels: cold < hot < warm
```

### 19.1.8.3 matrix

<https://bookdown.org/tonykuoyj/eloquentr/matrix-dataframe-more.html>

```
my_mat <- matrix(1:6, nrow = 2)
my_mat

##      [,1] [,2] [,3]
## [1,]    1    3    5
## [2,]    2    4    6

class(my_mat)

## [1] "matrix" "array"

my_mat2 <- matrix(1:6, nrow = 2, byrow = TRUE)
my_mat2
```

```

##      [,1] [,2] [,3]
## [1,]    1    2    3
## [2,]    4    5    6
my_mat2[2, 3]

## [1] 6
my_mat2[2, ]

## [1] 4 5 6
my_mat2[, 3]

## [1] 3 6
filter <- my_mat2 < 6 & my_mat2 > 1
my_mat2[filter]

## [1] 4 2 5 3

```

boolean will become value in a matrix, like vector

```

my_mat3 <- matrix(c(1, 2, TRUE, FALSE, 3, 4), nrow = 2)
my_mat3

##      [,1] [,2] [,3]
## [1,]    1    1    3
## [2,]    2    0    4
class(my_mat3[, 2])

## [1] "numeric"

```

#### 19.1.8.4 data frame

- variable: column
- observation: row
- value: cell

```

team_name <- c("Chicago Bulls", "Golden State Warriors")
wins <- c(72, 73)
losses <- c(10, 9)
is_champion <- c(TRUE, FALSE)
season <- c("1995-96", "2015-16")

great_nba_teams <- data.frame(team_name, wins, losses, is_champion, season)
great_nba_teams

##              team_name wins losses is_champion   season
## 1          Chicago Bulls    72     10        TRUE 1995-96
## 2 Golden State Warriors    73      9       FALSE 2015-16
great_nba_teams[1, 1]

## [1] "Chicago Bulls"

```

```

great_nba_teams[1, ]

##      team_name wins losses is_champion season
## 1 Chicago Bulls    72     10      TRUE 1995-96
great_nba_teams[, 1]

## [1] "Chicago Bulls"      "Golden State Warriors"
stringsAsFactors = TRUE

team_name <- c("Chicago Bulls", "Golden State Warriors")
wins <- c(72, 73)
losses <- c(10, 9)
is_champion <- c(TRUE, FALSE)
season <- c("1995-96", "2015-16")

great_nba_teams <- data.frame(team_name, wins, losses, is_champion, season,
                                stringsAsFactors = TRUE)
great_nba_teams[, 1]

## [1] Chicago Bulls      Golden State Warriors
## Levels: Chicago Bulls Golden State Warriors

stringsAsFactors = FALSE

team_name <- c("Chicago Bulls", "Golden State Warriors")
wins <- c(72, 73)
losses <- c(10, 9)
is_champion <- c(TRUE, FALSE)
season <- c("1995-96", "2015-16")

great_nba_teams <- data.frame(team_name, wins, losses, is_champion, season,
                                stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
great_nba_teams[, 1]

## [1] "Chicago Bulls"      "Golden State Warriors"

great_nba_teams$team_name

```

#### 19.1.8.4.1 selecting variable or column

```

## [1] "Chicago Bulls"      "Golden State Warriors"
great_nba_teams[, "team_name"]

## [1] "Chicago Bulls"      "Golden State Warriors"

filter <- great_nba_teams$is_champion == TRUE
great_nba_teams[filter, ]

```

#### 19.1.8.4.2 filtering observation or row

```
##      team_name wins losses is_champion season
## 1 Chicago Bulls    72     10      TRUE 1995-96

str(great_nba_teams)
```

### 19.1.8.4.3 check mixed data type

```
## 'data.frame':   2 obs. of  5 variables:
## $ team_name : chr "Chicago Bulls" "Golden State Warriors"
## $ wins       : num  72 73
## $ losses     : num  10 9
## $ is_champion: logi TRUE FALSE
## $ season     : chr "1995-96" "2015-16"
```

## 19.2 W3School

<https://www.w3schools.com/r/default.asp>

### 19.2.1 same multiple variable

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_variables\\_multiple.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_variables_multiple.asp)

```
# Assign the same value to multiple variables in one line
var1 <- var2 <- var3 <- "Orange"

# Print variable values
var1

## [1] "Orange"

var2

## [1] "Orange"

var3

## [1] "Orange"
```

### 19.2.2 legal variable name

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_variables\\_name.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_variables_name.asp)

```
# Legal variable names:
myvar <- "John"
my_var <- "John"
myVar <- "John"
MYVAR <- "John"
myvar2 <- "John"
.myvar <- "John"

## Illegal variable names:
# 2myvar <- "John"
# my-var <- "John"
```

```
# my var <- "John"
# _my_var <- "John"
# my_v@ar <- "John"
# TRUE <- "John"
```

### 19.2.3 complex number

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_data\\_types.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_data_types.asp)

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_numbers.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_numbers.asp)

### 19.2.4 escape character

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_strings\\_esc.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_strings_esc.asp)

### 19.2.5 global assignment <<-

```
my_function <- function() {
  txt <<- "fantastic"
  paste("R is", txt)
}
```

```
my_function()
```

```
## [1] "R is fantastic"
```

```
print(txt)
```

```
## [1] "fantastic"
```

```
txt <- "awesome"
my_function <- function() {
  txt <<- "fantastic"
  paste("R is", txt)
}
```

```
my_function()
```

```
## [1] "R is fantastic"
```

```
paste("R is", txt)
```

```
## [1] "R is fantastic"
```

### 19.2.6 data type

#### 19.2.6.1 array

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_arrays.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_arrays.asp)

```
# An array with one dimension with values ranging from 1 to 24
thisarray <- c(1:24)
thisarray
```

```

## [1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24

# An array with more than one dimension
multiarray <- array(thisarray, dim = c(4, 3, 2))
multiarray

## , , 1
##
## [,1] [,2] [,3]
## [1,]    1    5    9
## [2,]    2    6   10
## [3,]    3    7   11
## [4,]    4    8   12
##
## , , 2
##
## [,1] [,2] [,3]
## [1,] 13 17 21
## [2,] 14 18 22
## [3,] 15 19 23
## [4,] 16 20 24
multiarray[2, 3, 2]

## [1] 22

```

### 19.2.6.2 list

[https://www.w3schools.com/r/r\\_lists.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/r/r_lists.asp)

## 19.3 Apan Liao

R 演習室

<https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PL5AC0ADBF65924EAD>

### 19.3.1 data input

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=STcIxf\\_vUWY&list=PL5AC0ADBF65924EAD&index=1](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=STcIxf_vUWY&list=PL5AC0ADBF65924EAD&index=1)

- `scan()`
- `read`
  - `read.table()`
  - `read.csv()`

### 19.3.2 descriptive statistics

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GL3Wv\\_45LaU&list=PL5AC0ADBF65924EAD&index=2](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GL3Wv_45LaU&list=PL5AC0ADBF65924EAD&index=2)



## Chapter 20

# Laplace transform



# Chapter 21

## conic section

conic section 圓錐曲線 / 圓錐截痕

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conic\\_section](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conic_section)

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/222882/drawing-minimal-xy-axis>

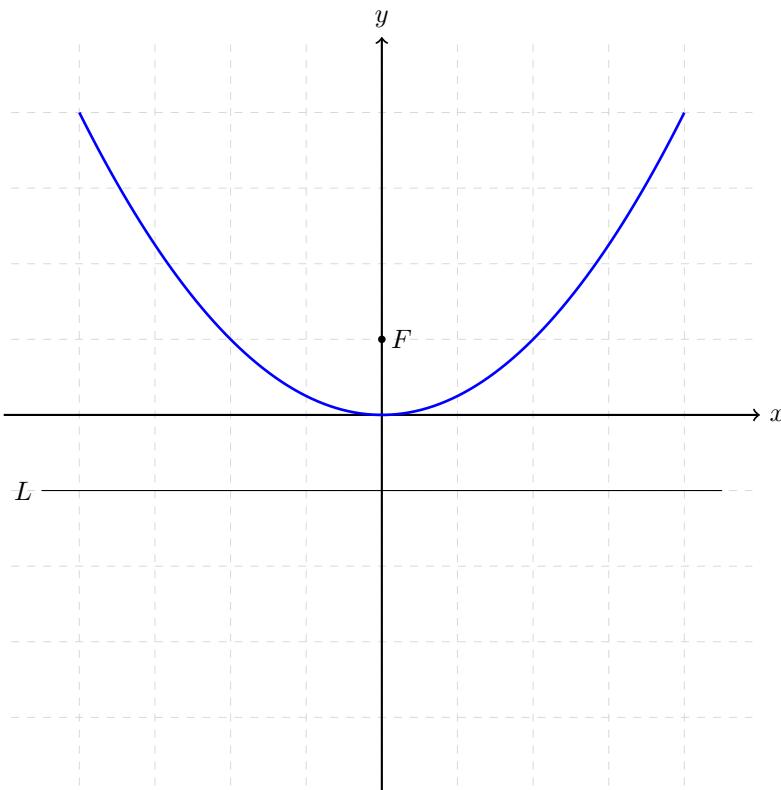


Figure 21.1: parabola defined by focus, directrix, eccentricity

## 21.1 Cartesian coordinate: focus, directrix, eccentricity

focus, directrix, eccentricity 焦點, 準線, 離心率

$$\begin{cases} F = (0, y_F) \\ L = y - y_L = 0 \\ \epsilon = \frac{\overline{PF}}{d(P, L)} = \frac{\|(x, y) - (0, y_F)\|}{\|y - y_L\|} \end{cases} \quad \begin{array}{l} F : \text{focus} \\ L : \text{directrix} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} P = (x, y) \\ \epsilon : \text{eccentricity} \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

$$0 \leq \epsilon = \frac{\overline{PF}}{d(P, L)} = \frac{\overline{PF}}{\overline{PP'}} = \frac{\|(x, y) - (0, y_F)\|}{\|(x, y) - (x, y_L)\|} = \frac{\|(x, y - y_F)\|}{\|(0, y - y_L)\|} = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}}{\sqrt{(y - y_L)^2}} \quad (21.1)$$

$$\epsilon^2 = \frac{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}{(y - y_L)^2} = \frac{x^2 + y^2 - 2y_F y + y_F^2}{y^2 - 2y_L y + y_L^2} \quad (21.2)$$

$$0 = x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) y^2 - 2(y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L) y + (y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2) \quad (21.3)$$

$$\stackrel{\epsilon \neq 1}{=} x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) \left[ y^2 - \frac{2(y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L)}{1 - \epsilon^2} y + \frac{y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right] \quad (21.4)$$

$$= x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) \quad (21.5)$$

$$\left[ y^2 - \frac{2(y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L)}{1 - \epsilon^2} y + \left( \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 + \frac{y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right] \quad (21.6)$$

$$= x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) \left[ \left( y - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 + \frac{(y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2)(1 - \epsilon^2) - (y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L)^2}{(1 - \epsilon^2)^2} \right] \quad (21.7)$$

$$= x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) \left( y - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 + \frac{(y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2)(1 - \epsilon^2) - (y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L)^2}{1 - \epsilon^2} \quad (21.8)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2)(1 - \epsilon^2) - (y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L)^2 \\ &= (1 - \epsilon^2) y_F^2 - (\epsilon^2 - \epsilon^4) y_L^2 - y_F^2 + 2\epsilon^2 y_F y_L - \epsilon^4 y_L^2 \\ &= -\epsilon^2 y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2 + 2\epsilon^2 y_F y_L = -\epsilon^2 (y_F - y_L)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\epsilon^2 (y_F - y_L)^2}{1 - \epsilon^2} \stackrel{\epsilon \neq 1}{=} x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) \left( y - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 \\ & 1 \stackrel{\epsilon \neq 0, 1}{=} \begin{cases} \left( \frac{x - 0}{\frac{\epsilon(y_F - y_L)}{\sqrt{1 - \epsilon^2}}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{y - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2}}{\frac{\epsilon(y_F - y_L)}{1 - \epsilon^2}} \right)^2 & 1 - \epsilon^2 > 0 \stackrel{\epsilon \geq 0}{\Rightarrow} 0 < \epsilon < 1 \\ -\left( \frac{x - 0}{\frac{\epsilon(y_F - y_L)}{\sqrt{\epsilon^2 - 1}}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{y - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2}}{\frac{\epsilon(y_F - y_L)}{1 - \epsilon^2}} \right)^2 & 1 - \epsilon^2 < 0 \stackrel{\epsilon \geq 0}{\Rightarrow} \epsilon > 1 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$\epsilon = 0 \text{ or } \lim_{|y_L| \rightarrow \infty} \epsilon = 0$$

$$r = \overline{PF} = \|(x, y) - (0, y_F)\| = \|(x, y - y_F)\| = \sqrt{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}$$

$$\epsilon = \frac{r}{d(P, L)} = \frac{\overline{PF}}{\overline{PP'}} = \frac{\|(x, y) - (0, y_F)\|}{\|(x, y) - (x, y_L)\|} = \frac{\|(x, y - y_F)\|}{\|(0, y - y_L)\|} = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}}{|y - y_L|}$$

$$\lim_{|y_L| \rightarrow \infty} \epsilon = \lim_{|y_L| \rightarrow \infty} \frac{r}{d(P, L)} = \lim_{|y_L| \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}}{|y - y_L|} = 0$$

$$\epsilon = 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= x^2 + (1 - \epsilon^2) y^2 - 2(y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L) y + (y_F^2 - \epsilon^2 y_L^2) \\ &\stackrel{\epsilon=1}{=} x^2 + (1 - 1^2) y^2 - 2(y_F - 1^2 y_L) y + (y_F^2 - 1^2 y_L^2) \\ &= x^2 - 2(y_F - y_L) y + (y_F^2 - y_L^2) \\ &= x^2 - 2(y_F - y_L) y + (y_F + y_L)(y_F - y_L) \\ x^2 &= 2(y_F - y_L) \left( y - \frac{y_F + y_L}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Let one curve vertex  $P = V = (0, 0)$  on the curve, and fix the directrix  $L$  or  $y_L$ ,

$$\epsilon \neq 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &\stackrel{P(x,y)=V(0,0)}{=} 0 + \left( \frac{0 - \frac{y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L}{1 - \epsilon^2}}{\frac{\epsilon(y_F - y_L)}{1 - \epsilon^2}} \right)^2 \\ &\Rightarrow y_F - \epsilon^2 y_L = \pm \epsilon(y_F - y_L) \\ &\Rightarrow \begin{cases} (1 - \epsilon)y_F = \epsilon(\epsilon - 1)y_L & + \\ (1 + \epsilon)y_F = \epsilon(\epsilon + 1)y_L & - \end{cases} \\ &\Rightarrow y_F = \begin{cases} -\epsilon y_L & + \\ \epsilon y_L & - \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$\epsilon = 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 &= 2(y_F - y_L) \left( y - \frac{y_F + y_L}{2} \right) \\ &\stackrel{P(x,y)=V(0,0)}{\Rightarrow} 0^2 = 2(y_F - y_L) \left( 0 - \frac{y_F + y_L}{2} \right) \\ &\Rightarrow 0 = (y_F - y_L)(y_F + y_L) \\ &\Rightarrow y_F = \mp y_L \end{aligned}$$

or by definition of eccentricity (21.1)

$$0 \leq \epsilon = \frac{\overline{PF}}{d(P, L)} = \frac{\overline{PF}}{\overline{PP'}} = \frac{\|(x, y) - (0, y_F)\|}{\|(x, y) - (x, y_L)\|} = \frac{\|(x, y - y_F)\|}{\|(0, y - y_L)\|} = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + (y - y_F)^2}}{\sqrt{(y - y_L)^2}}$$

$$\stackrel{P(x, y) = V(0, 0)}{=} \frac{\sqrt{0^2 + (0 - y_F)^2}}{\sqrt{(0 - y_L)^2}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{y_F}{y_L}\right)^2}$$

$$\epsilon^2 = \left(\frac{y_F}{y_L}\right)^2 \Rightarrow y_F = \mp \epsilon y_L$$

actually,

$$y_F = -\epsilon y_L$$

## 21.2 two-definition equivalence for ellipse and hyperbola

<https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/1833973/prove-that-the-directrix-focus-and-focus-definitions-are-equivalent>

<https://www.geogebra.org/calculator/zkppuxwp>

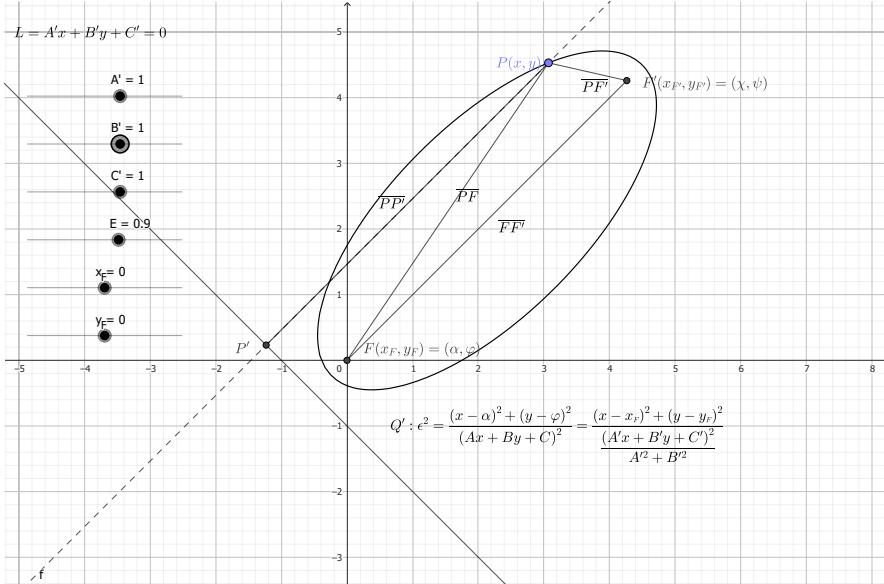


Figure 21.2: conic sections

$$\begin{cases} P = (x, y) \\ F = (x_F, y_F) = (\alpha, \varphi) & F' = (x_{F'}, y_{F'}) = (\chi, \psi) \\ L = A'x + B'y + C' = 0 \end{cases}$$

### 21.2.1 first definition for conic sections including ellipses and hyperbolas

distance from a point to a line<sup>[^22^]</sup>

$$0 \leq \epsilon = \frac{\overline{PF}}{d(P, L)} = \frac{\sqrt{(x - x_F)^2 + (y - y_F)^2}}{\frac{|A'x + B'y + C'|}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}}} = \frac{\sqrt{(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2}}{|Ax + By + C|}, \begin{cases} A = \frac{A'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \\ B = \frac{B'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \\ C = \frac{C'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \end{cases}$$

$$A^2 + B^2 = \left( \frac{A'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{B'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \right)^2 = 1$$

or allowing  $\epsilon < 0$  by squaring the definition

$$\epsilon^2 = \frac{(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2}{(Ax + By + C)^2} = \frac{(x - x_F)^2 + (y - y_F)^2}{\frac{(A'x + B'y + C')^2}{A'^2 + B'^2}}$$

$$(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 = [\epsilon(Ax + By + C)]^2$$

### 21.2.2 second definition for ellipses and hyperbolas

$$2c = \overline{FF'} = \|(x_F, y_F) - (x_{F'}, y_{F'})\| = \|(\alpha, \varphi) - (\chi, \psi)\| \\ = \sqrt{(\alpha - \chi)^2 + (\chi - \psi)^2}$$

$$D = \begin{cases} \sqrt{(x - x_F)^2 + (y - y_F)^2} + \sqrt{(x - x_{F'})^2 + (y - y_{F'})^2} & \text{ellipse} \\ \sqrt{(x - x_F)^2 + (y - y_F)^2} - \sqrt{(x - x_{F'})^2 + (y - y_{F'})^2} & \text{hyperbola} \end{cases} \\ = \sqrt{(x - x_F)^2 + (y - y_F)^2} \pm \sqrt{(x - x_{F'})^2 + (y - y_{F'})^2} \\ = \sqrt{(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2} \pm \sqrt{(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2}$$

$$(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 = \left( D \mp \sqrt{(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2} \right)^2 \\ = D^2 \mp 2D\sqrt{(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2} \\ + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
D^2 &= (x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2 \\
&\pm 2\sqrt{\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]} \\
&\frac{(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2 - D^2}{= \mp 2\sqrt{\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]}} \\
&\quad \left[\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]^2 + D^4\right. \\
&\quad \left.- 2D^2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]\right] \\
&= 4\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] \\
&\quad \left[\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]^2 + \left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]^2\right. \\
&\quad \left.+ 2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] + D^4\right. \\
&\quad \left.- 2D^2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]\right] \\
&= 4\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] \\
0 &= \left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]^2 + \left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]^2 \\
&\quad - 2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] + D^4 \\
&\quad - 2D^2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 + (x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] \\
0 &= \left\{\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right] - \left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]\right\}^2 + D^4 \\
&\quad - 2D^2\left\{\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right] + \left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right]\right\} \\
0 &= \left\{\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] - \left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\right\}^2 + D^4 \\
&\quad - 2D^2\left\{\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] - \left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right]\right\} \\
&\quad - 4D^2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right] \\
&\quad (2D)^2\left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right] \\
&= \left\{\left[(x - \chi)^2 + (y - \psi)^2\right] - \left[(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2\right] - D^2\right\}^2 \\
&= \left\{\left[(x - \chi)^2 - (x - \alpha)^2\right] + \left[(y - \psi)^2 - (y - \varphi)^2\right] - D^2\right\}^2 \\
&= \{(2x - \chi - \alpha)(\alpha - \chi) + (2y - \psi - \varphi)(\varphi - \psi) - D^2\}^2 \\
&= \{2(\alpha - \chi)x - (\alpha^2 - \chi^2) + 2(\varphi - \psi)y - (\varphi^2 - \psi^2) - D^2\}^2 \\
&= \{2(\alpha - \chi)x + 2(\varphi - \psi)y - [(\alpha^2 - \chi^2) + (\varphi^2 - \psi^2) + D^2]\}^2
\end{aligned}$$

$D \neq 0$

$$\begin{aligned}
&(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 \\
&= \left[\frac{\alpha - \chi}{D}x + \frac{\varphi - \psi}{D}y - \left(\frac{\alpha^2 - \chi^2}{2D} + \frac{\varphi^2 - \psi^2}{2D} + \frac{D}{2}\right)\right]^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{cases} (x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 = [\epsilon(Ax + By + C)]^2 \\ (x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 = \left[ \frac{\alpha - \chi}{D}x + \frac{\varphi - \psi}{D}y - \left( \frac{\alpha^2 - \chi^2}{2D} + \frac{\varphi^2 - \psi^2}{2D} + \frac{D}{2} \right) \right]^2 \end{cases}$$

$$(A, B, C) \rightleftarrows (\chi, \psi, D)$$

$$\begin{cases} \epsilon A = \pm \frac{\alpha - \chi}{D} & \chi \pm \epsilon AD = \alpha \\ \epsilon B = \pm \frac{\varphi - \psi}{D} & \psi \pm \epsilon BD = \varphi \\ \epsilon C = \mp \left( \frac{\alpha^2 - \chi^2}{2D} + \frac{\varphi^2 - \psi^2}{2D} + \frac{D}{2} \right) & \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2\epsilon C &= \mp \left( \frac{\alpha - \chi}{D}(\alpha + \chi) + \frac{\varphi - \psi}{D}(\varphi + \psi) + D \right) \\ &= \mp (\pm \epsilon A(\alpha + \chi) \pm \epsilon B(\varphi + \psi) + D) \\ \mp \epsilon(A\alpha + B\varphi + 2C) &= \pm \epsilon A\chi \pm \epsilon B\psi + D \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \pm \epsilon A \\ 0 & 1 & \pm \epsilon B \\ \pm \epsilon A & \pm \epsilon B & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \chi \\ \psi \\ D \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \varphi \\ \mp \epsilon(A\alpha + B\varphi + 2C) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \pm \epsilon A & \alpha \\ 0 & 1 & \pm \epsilon B & \varphi \\ 0 & \pm \epsilon B & 1 \mp \epsilon^2 A^2 & \mp \epsilon(2A\alpha + B\varphi + 2C) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \pm \epsilon A & \alpha \\ 0 & 1 & \pm \epsilon B & \varphi \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \mp \epsilon^2 A^2 \mp \epsilon^2 B^2 & \mp \epsilon(2A\alpha + 2B\varphi + 2C) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \pm \epsilon A & \alpha \\ 0 & 1 & \pm \epsilon B & \varphi \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{\mp 2\epsilon(A\alpha + B\varphi + C)}{1 \mp \epsilon^2(A^2 + B^2)} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A^2 + B^2 = \left( \frac{A'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{B'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \right)^2 = 1$$

$$\begin{cases} \chi = \alpha \mp \epsilon AD = \alpha \mp \epsilon \frac{A'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} D \\ \psi = \varphi \mp \epsilon BD = \varphi \mp \epsilon \frac{B'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} D \\ D = \frac{\mp 2\epsilon(A\alpha + B\varphi + C)}{1 \mp \epsilon^2(A^2 + B^2)} = \frac{\mp 2\epsilon}{1 \mp \epsilon^2} \frac{A'\alpha + B'\varphi + C'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \quad A^2 + B^2 = 1 \end{cases}$$

actually, only one of two solutions is true

$$\begin{cases} \chi = \alpha - \epsilon AD = \alpha - \epsilon \frac{A'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} D = \alpha - \frac{2\epsilon^2}{\epsilon^2 - 1} \frac{A'^2 \alpha + A'B'\varphi + A'C'}{A'^2 + B'^2} \\ \psi = \varphi - \epsilon BD = \varphi - \epsilon \frac{B'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} D = \varphi - \frac{2\epsilon^2}{\epsilon^2 - 1} \frac{A'B'\alpha + B'^2\varphi + B'C'}{A'^2 + B'^2} \\ D = \frac{-2\epsilon(A\alpha + B\varphi + C)}{1 - \epsilon^2(A^2 + B^2)} = \frac{-2\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon^2} \frac{A'\alpha + B'\varphi + C'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} = \frac{2\epsilon}{\epsilon^2 - 1} \frac{A'\alpha + B'\varphi + C'}{\sqrt{A'^2 + B'^2}} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} \chi = \frac{(\epsilon^2 - 1)(A'^2 + B'^2)\alpha - 2\epsilon^2(A'^2\alpha + A'B'\varphi + A'C')}{(\epsilon^2 - 1)(A'^2 + B'^2)} \\ \psi = \frac{(\epsilon^2 - 1)(A'^2 + B'^2)\varphi - 2\epsilon^2(A'B'\alpha + B'^2\varphi + B'C')}{(\epsilon^2 - 1)(A'^2 + B'^2)} \\ \left| \frac{D}{d(F, L)} \right| = \left| \frac{2\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right| \Rightarrow \left( \frac{D}{d(F, L)} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{2\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (\epsilon^2 - 1)(A'^2 + B'^2)\alpha - 2\epsilon^2(A'^2\alpha + A'B'\varphi + A'C') \\ &= (-(\epsilon^2 + 1)A'^2 + (\epsilon^2 - 1)B'^2)\alpha - 2\epsilon^2(A'B'\varphi + A'C') \\ &= (-(\epsilon^2 + 1)A'^2 + (\epsilon^2 - 1)B'^2)\alpha - 2\epsilon^2(A'B'\varphi + A'C') \end{aligned}$$

Can the above be more simplified?

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{FF'}^2 &= (\alpha - \chi)^2 + (\varphi - \psi)^2 \\ &= (\alpha - (\alpha - \epsilon AD))^2 + (\varphi - (\varphi - \epsilon BD))^2 \\ &= (\epsilon D)^2 (A^2 + B^2) \\ &= (\epsilon D)^2 \end{aligned}$$

### 21.2.3 eccentricity and its equivalent representation

$$\left( \frac{c}{a} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{\overline{PF}}{d(P, L)} \right)^2 = \epsilon^2 = \left( \frac{\overline{FF'}}{D} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{2c}{D} \right)^2 \Rightarrow D = 2a$$

$$\left( \frac{D}{d(F, L)} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{2\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon^2} \right)^2$$

## 21.3 Cartesian coordinate: standard form / standard equation

circle	$\left( \frac{y - k}{a} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{x - h}{a} \right)^2 = 1$	$b = a$
ellipse	$\left( \frac{y - k}{b} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{x - h}{a} \right)^2 = 1$	vertical $b > a$
	$\left( \frac{y - k}{b} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{x - h}{a} \right)^2 = 1$	horizontal $a > b$
parabola	$(y - k) - 4c(x - h)^2 = 0$	vertical
	$-4c(y - k)^2 + (x - h) = 0$	horizontal
hyperbola	$\left( \frac{y - k}{b} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{x - h}{a} \right)^2 = 1$	vertical $\frac{x - h}{a} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{y - k}{b} = \pm 1$
	$-\left( \frac{y - k}{b} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{x - h}{a} \right)^2 = 1$	horizontal $\frac{y - k}{b} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{x - h}{a} = \pm 1$

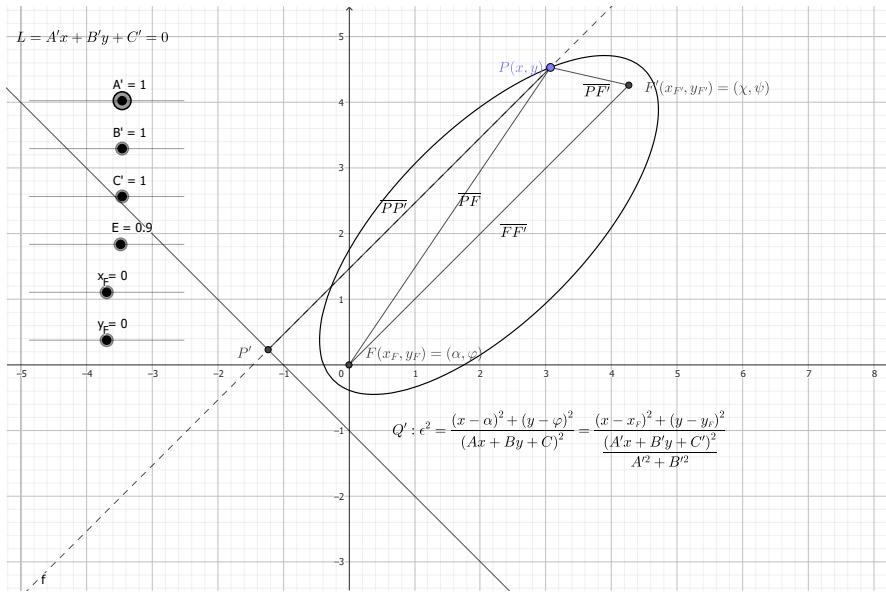


Figure 21.3: conic sections: ellipse

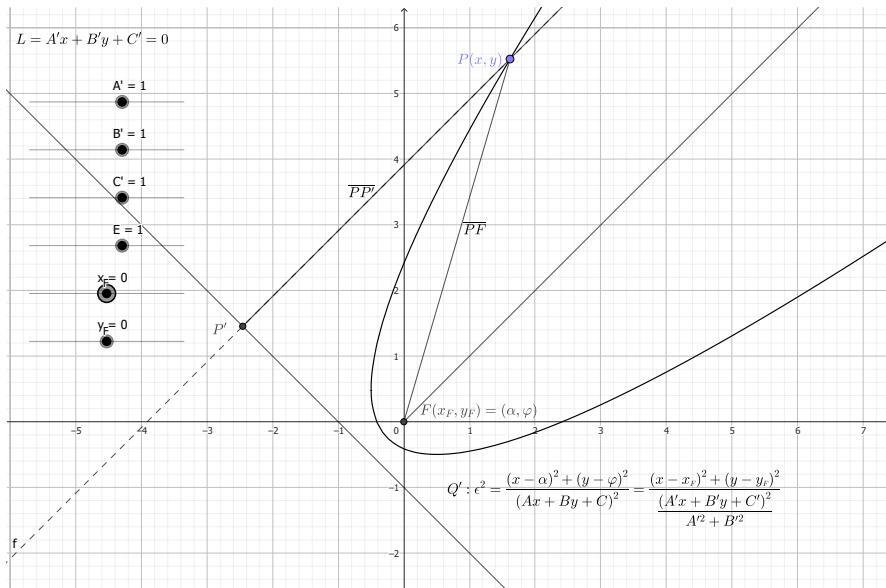


Figure 21.4: conic sections: parabola

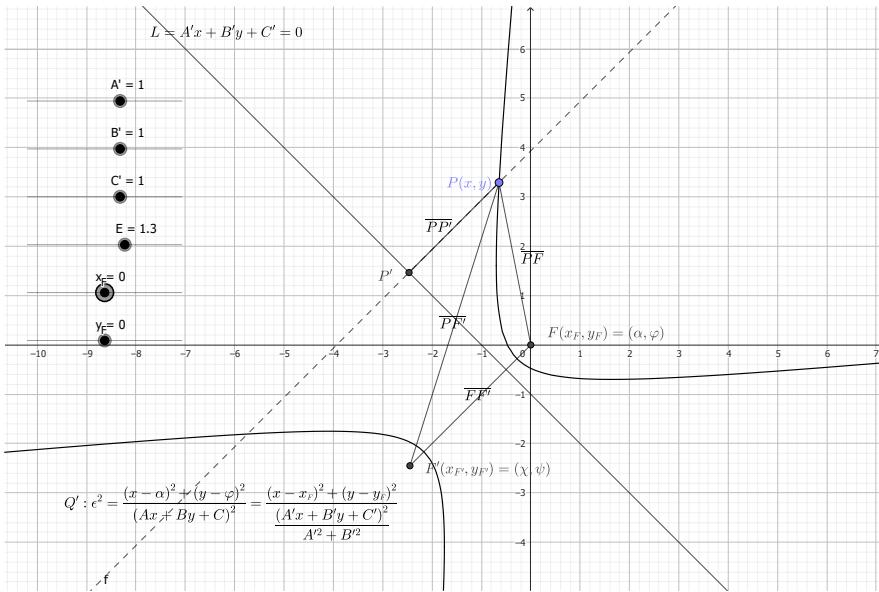


Figure 21.5: conic sections: hyperbola

## 21.4 parametric equation

circle	$\left(\frac{y-k}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{x-h}{a}\right)^2 = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 & h \\ 0 & a & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ \sin t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & 0 & h \\ 0 & \sin t & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
ellipse	$\left(\frac{y-k}{b}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{x-h}{a}\right)^2 = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 & h \\ 0 & b & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ \sin t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & 0 & h \\ 0 & \sin t & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
parabola	$(y - k) - 4c(x - h)^2 = 0$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & h \\ 0 & 4c & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} t \\ t^2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} t & 0 & h \\ 0 & t^2 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
	$-4c(y - k)^2 + (x - h) = 0$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4c & 0 & h \\ 0 & 1 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} t \\ t^2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} t^2 & 0 & h \\ 0 & t & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
hyperbola	$\left(\frac{y-k}{b}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{x-h}{a}\right)^2 = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 & h \\ 0 & b & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \pm \cosh t \\ \sinh t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \tan t & 0 & h \\ 0 & \sec t & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
	$-\left(\frac{y-k}{b}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{x-h}{a}\right)^2 = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 & h \\ 0 & b & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \sinh t \\ \pm \cosh t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sec t & 0 & h \\ 0 & \tan t & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

tangent half-angle formula<sup>[24]</sup>

## 21.5 polar coordinate

$$(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \varphi)^2 = [\epsilon(Ax + By + C)]^2$$

$$\begin{cases} x = r \cos \theta \\ y = r \sin \theta \end{cases}$$

$$(r \cos \theta - \alpha)^2 + (r \sin \theta - \varphi)^2 = [\epsilon (Ar \cos \theta + Br \sin \theta + C)]^2$$

If  $\begin{cases} F = (x_F, y_F) = (\alpha, \varphi) = (0, 0) \\ L = Ax + By + C = x + p = 0 \end{cases}$

$$(r \cos \theta)^2 + (r \sin \theta)^2 = [\epsilon (r \cos \theta + p)]^2$$

$$r^2 =$$

$$r = \pm \epsilon (r \cos \theta + p)$$

$$= \pm (r \epsilon \cos \theta + \epsilon p)$$

$$r (1 \mp \epsilon \cos \theta) = \epsilon p$$

$$r = \frac{\epsilon p}{1 \mp \epsilon \cos \theta}$$

<https://www.geogebra.org/calculator/azksjxbq>

$r = \frac{\epsilon p}{1 - \epsilon \cos \theta}$  will not cross  $L = x + p = 0$  on graphs, so maybe it is a more correct solution

$$r = \frac{\epsilon p}{1 - \epsilon \cos \theta}$$

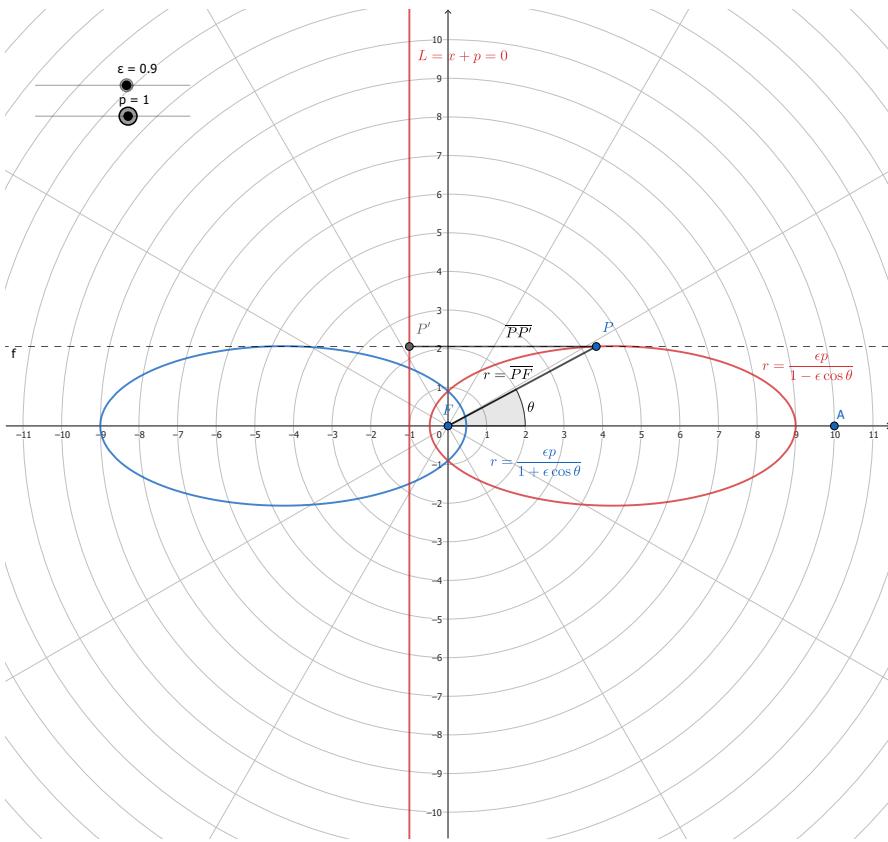


Figure 21.6: polar conic sections: ellipse

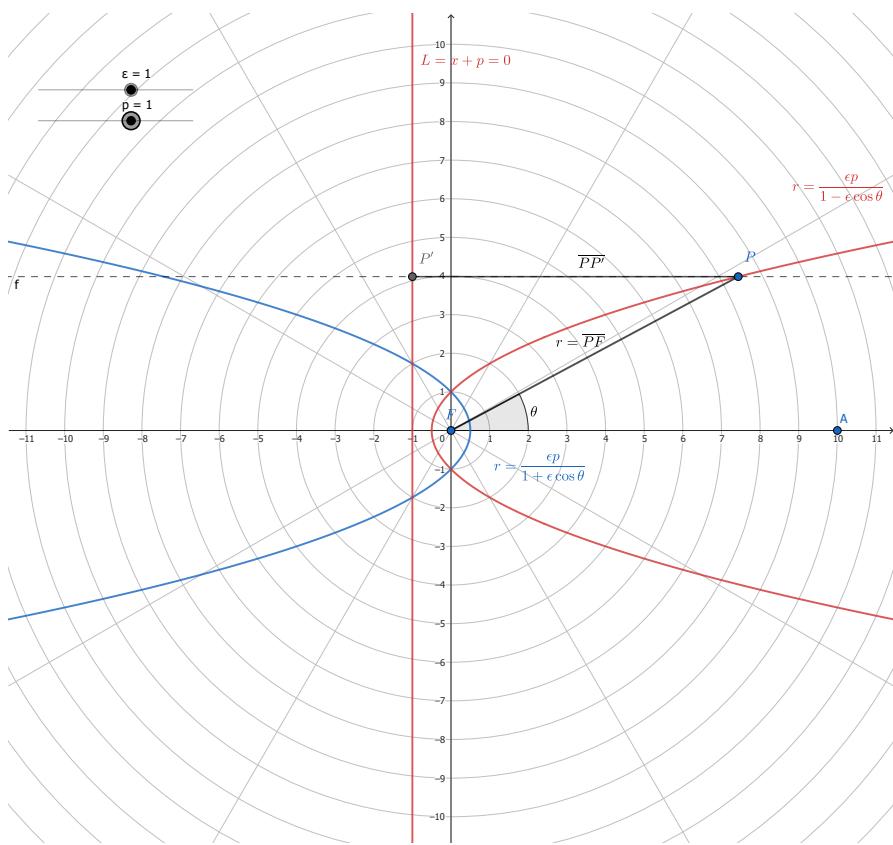


Figure 21.7: polar conic sections: parabola

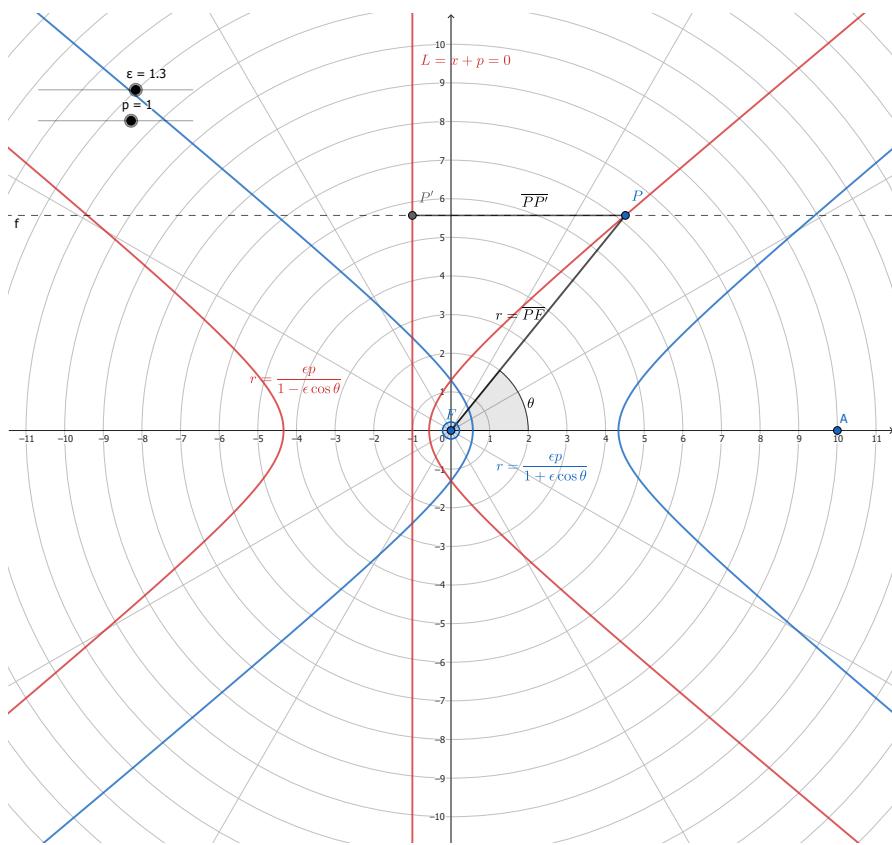


Figure 21.8: polar conic sections: hyperbola

## 21.6 Cartesian coordinate: general form / quadratic equation

<https://ccjou.wordpress.com/2013/05/24/%E5%9C%A8%E9%9D%A2/>

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix\\_representation\\_of\\_conic\\_sections](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix_representation_of_conic_sections)

$$ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0$$

$$(x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = (x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} ax + (b/2)y \\ (b/2)x + cy \end{pmatrix} = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + (d \ e) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + f \\ &= \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{x} + f, \quad \begin{cases} A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} & A \text{ real symmetric} \\ \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} d \\ e \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

real symmetric matrix diagonalizable<sup>[23]</sup>

## 21.7 homogeneous coordinate

X homogeneous coordinate

[homogeneous coordinate](#) O: HTML, X: PDF becoming web link

O homogeneous coordinate<sup>[25]</sup>

X homogeneous coordinate

X homogeneous coordinate<sup>[21.7]</sup>

<https://ccjou.wordpress.com/2013/05/24/%E5%9C%A8%E9%9D%A2/>

$$(x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & 0 \\ b/2 & c & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & 0 \\ b/2 & c & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (d \ e) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \delta & \epsilon & \zeta \\ \eta & \theta & \kappa \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha x + \beta y + \gamma \\ \delta x + \epsilon y + \zeta \\ \eta x + \theta y + \kappa \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{cases} \gamma + \eta = d \\ \zeta + \theta = e \end{cases} \\ &= (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \gamma \\ 0 & 0 & \zeta \\ \eta & \theta & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & d/2 \\ 0 & 0 & e/2 \\ d/2 & e/2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f \\
&= (x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + (d \ e) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + f = \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{x} + f \\
&= (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & d/2 \\ b/2 & c & e/2 \\ d/2 & e/2 & f \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (\mathbf{x}^\top \ 1) M \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, M = \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & d/2 \\ b/2 & c & e/2 \\ d/2 & e/2 & f \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f \\
&= (x \ y) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 \\ b/2 & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + (d \ e) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + f = \mathbf{x}^\top A \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{x} + f \\
&= (x \ y \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & d/2 \\ b/2 & c & e/2 \\ d/2 & e/2 & f \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (\mathbf{x}^\top \ 1) M \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, M = \begin{pmatrix} a & b/2 & d/2 \\ b/2 & c & e/2 \\ d/2 & e/2 & f \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix\\_representation\\_of\\_conic\\_sections](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix_representation_of_conic_sections)

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= Q = Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F \\
&= [x \ y \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} A & B/2 & D/2 \\ B/2 & C & E/2 \\ D/2 & E/2 & F \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{x}_h^\top A_Q \mathbf{x}_h \\
&= [x \ y] \begin{bmatrix} A & B/2 \\ B/2 & C \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} + [D \ E] \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} + F = \mathbf{x}^\top A_{Q,33} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{x} + F
\end{aligned}$$



# Chapter 22

## distance from a point to a line

點到直線距離

**Theorem 22.1.**

$$\begin{cases} P = P(x_0, y_0) \\ L = L(x, y) = Ax + By + C = 0, A^2 + B^2 \neq 0 \end{cases} \Downarrow d(P, L) = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}$$

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Distance\\_from\\_a\\_point\\_to\\_a\\_line](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Distance_from_a_point_to_a_line)

<https://highscope.ch.ntu.edu.tw/wordpress/?p=47407>

<https://web.math.sinica.edu.tw/mathmedia/HTMLArticle18.jsp?mID=40312>

Proofs:

### 22.1 by shortest $\overline{PP'}$

$$\begin{aligned} P' &= P'(x, y) \in L = Ax + By + C = 0 \\ \Rightarrow y &= \frac{-1}{B}(Ax + C) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{PP'}^2(x, y) &= (x_0 - x)^2 + (y_0 - y)^2 \\ &= (x_0 - x)^2 + \left( y_0 - \frac{-1}{B}(Ax + C) \right)^2 \\ &= (x - x_0)^2 + \left( \frac{A}{B}x + \frac{C}{B} + y_0 \right)^2 = \overline{PP'}^2(x) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \overline{PP'}^2(x) = 2(x - x_0) + 2 \left( \frac{A}{B}x + \frac{C}{B} + y_0 \right) \frac{A}{B} \\
&= \frac{2}{B^2} (B^2(x - x_0) + A^2x + AC + ABy_0) \\
&= \frac{2}{B^2} [(A^2 + B^2)x - (B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC)] \\
x &= \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2}
\end{aligned}$$

or by completing the square to find  $x$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
&\overline{PP'}^2 \left( x = \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} \right) \\
&= \left( \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} - x_0 \right)^2 + \left( \frac{A}{B} \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} + \frac{C}{B} + y_0 \right)^2 \\
&= \left( \frac{-A^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{A(B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC) + C(A^2 + B^2) + B(A^2 + B^2)y_0}{B(A^2 + B^2)} \right)^2 \\
&= \left( \frac{-A(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{AB^2x_0 + B^3y_0 + B^2C}{B(A^2 + B^2)} \right)^2 \\
&= \frac{A^2(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{(A^2 + B^2)^2} + \frac{B^2(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{(A^2 + B^2)^2} \\
&= \frac{(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{A^2 + B^2} \\
\overline{PP'} &= \overline{PP'} \left( x = \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} \right) = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}
\end{aligned}$$

## 22.2 by perpendicular foot

$$y = \frac{-A}{B}x - \frac{C}{B} = \frac{-1}{B}(Ax + C), \text{ if } B \neq 0$$

$$L_{\perp} : \left( y = \frac{B}{A}x + K \right) \perp \left( y = \frac{-A}{B}x - \frac{C}{B} \right) : L$$

$$L_{\perp} = L_{\perp}(x, y) = Bx - Ay + K = 0$$

$$P = P(x_0, y_0) \in L_{\perp} = B(x - x_0) - A(y - y_0) = 0$$

$$L_{\perp} = Bx - Ay - (Bx_0 - Ay_0) = 0$$

perpendicular foot = foot of the perpendicular  $P'$

$$\begin{aligned}
P' \in (L^\perp \cap L) &= \begin{cases} L = Ax + By + C = 0 \\ L^\perp = Bx - Ay - (Bx_0 - Ay_0) = 0 \end{cases} \\
&= \begin{cases} Ax + By = -C \\ Bx - Ay = Bx_0 - Ay_0 \end{cases} \\
P' = P'(x, y) &= \left( \frac{\begin{vmatrix} -C & B \\ Bx_0 - Ay_0 & -A \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} A & B \\ B & -A \end{vmatrix}}, \frac{\begin{vmatrix} A & -C \\ B & Bx_0 - Ay_0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} A & B \\ B & -A \end{vmatrix}} \right) \\
&= \left( \frac{\begin{vmatrix} C & B \\ -Bx_0 + Ay_0 & -A \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} A & -B \\ B & A \end{vmatrix}}, \frac{\begin{vmatrix} A & C \\ B & -Bx_0 + Ay_0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} A & -B \\ B & A \end{vmatrix}} \right) \\
&= \left( \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2}, \frac{-ABx_0 + A^2y_0 - BC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
d(P, L) &= \overline{PP'} \\
&= \left\| (x_0, y_0) - \left( \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2}, \frac{-ABx_0 + A^2y_0 - BC}{A^2 + B^2} \right) \right\| \\
&= \sqrt{\left( x_0 - \frac{B^2x_0 - ABy_0 - AC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2 + \left( y_0 - \frac{-ABx_0 + A^2y_0 - BC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\left( \frac{A^2x_0 + ABy_0 + AC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{ABx_0 + B^2y_0 + BC}{A^2 + B^2} \right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\frac{A^2(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2 + B^2(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{(A^2 + B^2)^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{A^2 + B^2}} \\
&= \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}
\end{aligned}$$

## 22.3 by normal vector

$$\begin{cases} \vec{n} = (A, B) \perp L = Ax + By + C = 0 \\ \vec{PP'} = P' - P = (x - x_0, y - y_0) \end{cases}$$

$P$ 到 $L$ 的距離 $d(P, L)$ 即為 $L$ 線上一點 $P'$ 對應之 $\vec{PP'}$ 在 $L$ 法向量 $\vec{n}$ 方向上的投影長

$$\begin{aligned}
\vec{PP'} \cdot \vec{n} &= \left\| \vec{PP'} \right\| \left\| \vec{n} \right\| \cos \theta \\
\left| \vec{PP'} \cdot \vec{n} \right| &= \left\| \vec{PP'} \right\| \left\| \vec{n} \right\| |\cos \theta| \\
\left\| \vec{PP'} \right\| |\cos \theta| &= \left| \vec{PP'} \cdot \hat{n} \right| = \frac{\left| \vec{PP'} \cdot \vec{n} \right|}{\left\| \vec{n} \right\|} = \frac{|(x - x_0, y - y_0) \cdot (A, B)|}{\|(A, B)\|} \\
&= \frac{|A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0)|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \frac{|-Ax_0 - By_0 + Ax + By|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} \\
\frac{Ax + By + C = 0}{Ax + By = -C} &= \frac{|-Ax_0 - By_0 - C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}
\end{aligned}$$

PDF LaTeX \usepackage{fdsymbol} to have \overrightharpoon vector; however, there are too many side effects, including ugly mathptmx  $\sum, \dots$

```

\usepackage{fdsymbol} % vector over accent, but will use mathptmx
% replace the rather ugly mathptmx \sum operator with the equivalent Computer Modern one
\let\sum\relax
\DeclareSymbolFont{CMylargesymbols}{OMX}{cmex}{m}{n}
\DeclareMathSymbol{\sum}{\mathop}{CMylargesymbols}{50}

```

## 22.4 by Cauchy inequality

$$\begin{aligned}
Ax + By + C &= 0 \\
Ax + By &= -C \\
(Ax + By) - (Ax_0 + By_0) &= -C - (Ax_0 + By_0) \\
A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0) &= -(Ax_0 + By_0 + C) \\
\overline{PP'}^2 &= (x_0 - x)^2 + (y_0 - y)^2 \\
[A^2 + B^2] \overline{PP'}^2 &= [A^2 + B^2] \left[ (x_0 - x)^2 + (y_0 - y)^2 \right] \\
&\geq [A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0)]^2 \\
&= [- (Ax_0 + By_0 + C)]^2 = (Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2 \\
\overline{PP'}^2 &\geq \frac{(Ax_0 + By_0 + C)^2}{A^2 + B^2} \\
\overline{PP'} &\geq \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}
\end{aligned}$$

# Chapter 23

## real symmetric matrix diagonalizable

<https://ccjou.wordpress.com/2011/02/09/%E5%80%BC%E5%AE%9A%E7%9F%A5%E6%9C%8D%E6%9E%98%E7%9F%A5%E5%80%BC/>

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/30619/what-is-the-best-symbol-for-vector-matrix-transpose>

**Theorem 23.1.**

實對稱矩陣的特徵值皆是實數，且對應特徵向量是實向量。

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \in \mathcal{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \\ A^\top = A \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{real matrix} \\ \text{symmetric matrix} \end{array} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{real symmetric matrix} \\ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \\ \mathbf{0} \neq \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{complex eigenvalue} \\ \text{complex eigenvector} \end{array} \\
 & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} Ax = \lambda x \end{array} \right. \quad \Downarrow \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \\ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{real eigenvalue (1)} \\ \text{real eigenvector (2)} \end{array}
 \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* (1)

$$\begin{aligned}
 Ax &= \lambda x \\
 \bar{A}\bar{x} &= \overline{Ax} = \overline{\lambda x} = \bar{\lambda}\bar{x} \\
 \bar{x}^\top \bar{A}^\top &= (\bar{A}\bar{x})^\top = (\bar{\lambda}\bar{x})^\top = \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top \\
 \bar{x}^\top A &\stackrel{\text{symmetric}}{=} \bar{x}^\top A^\top \stackrel{\text{real}}{=} \\
 \bar{x}^\top A &= \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top \\
 \lambda\bar{x}^\top x &= \bar{x}^\top (\lambda x) \stackrel{Ax=\lambda x}{=} \bar{x}^\top Ax = \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top x \\
 \lambda\bar{x}^\top x &= \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top x \\
 (\lambda - \bar{\lambda})\bar{x}^\top x &= 0 \wedge \begin{cases} \bar{x}^\top x = \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2 \\ x \neq 0 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \bar{x}^\top x \neq 0 \\
 \lambda - \bar{\lambda} &= 0 \\
 \lambda = \bar{\lambda} &\Leftrightarrow \lambda \in \mathbb{R}
 \end{aligned}$$

□

*Proof.* (1) fast concept

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\bar{A}\bar{x})^\top \mathbf{x} &= (\bar{x}^\top \bar{A}^\top) \mathbf{x} \stackrel{\text{symmetric}}{=} (\bar{x}^\top \bar{A}) \mathbf{x} = \bar{x}^\top (\bar{A}\mathbf{x}) \\
 (L) &= (\bar{A}\bar{x})^\top \mathbf{x} = \bar{x}^\top (\bar{A}\mathbf{x}) = (R) \\
 (L) &= (\bar{A}\bar{x})^\top \mathbf{x} \stackrel{Ax=\lambda x}{=} (\bar{\lambda}\bar{x})^\top \mathbf{x} = \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x} \\
 (R) &= \bar{x}^\top (\bar{A}\mathbf{x}) \stackrel{\text{real}}{=} \bar{x}^\top (Ax) \stackrel{Ax=\lambda x}{=} \bar{x}^\top (\lambda\mathbf{x}) = \lambda\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x} \\
 \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x} &= (\bar{A}\bar{x})^\top \mathbf{x} = \bar{x}^\top (\bar{A}\mathbf{x}) = \lambda\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x} \\
 \bar{\lambda}\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x} &= \lambda\bar{x}^\top \mathbf{x}
 \end{aligned}$$

□

*Proof.* (2)

???

推論特徵空間  $N(A - \lambda I)$  ( $A - \lambda I$  的零空間) 為  $\mathbb{R}^n$  的子空間，故  $\mathbf{x} \in N(A - \lambda I)$  是一個非零實向量。

□

### Theorem 23.2.

實對稱矩陣對應相異特徵值的特徵向量互為正交。

$$\left\{
 \begin{array}{ll}
 \begin{cases} A \in \mathcal{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) & \text{real matrix} \\ A^\top = A & \text{symmetric matrix} \end{cases} & \text{real symmetric matrix} \\
 Ax = \lambda x & \\
 \begin{cases} Ax_1 = \lambda_1 x_1 & (e_1) \\ Ax_2 = \lambda_2 x_2 & (e_2) \end{cases} & \begin{array}{ll} \lambda \in \mathbb{R} & \text{real eigenvalue} \\ x \in \mathbb{R}^n & \text{real eigenvector} \end{array} \\
 \lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2 & \\
 \Downarrow & \\
 x_1^\top x_2 = 0 \Leftrightarrow x_1 \perp x_2 &
 \end{array}
 \right.$$

*Proof.* (1)

$$\begin{aligned}
A\mathbf{x}_2 &= \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2 \\
\mathbf{x}_1^\top A \mathbf{x}_2 &\stackrel{\mathbf{x}_1^\top}{=} \mathbf{x}_1^\top \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2 = \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 = (1) \\
A\mathbf{x}_1 &= \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1 \\
\mathbf{x}_1^\top A^\top &= (A\mathbf{x}_1)^\top = (\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1)^\top = \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \\
\mathbf{x}_1^\top A^\top &= \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \\
\mathbf{x}_1^\top A \mathbf{x}_2 &\stackrel{\text{symmetric}}{=} \mathbf{x}_1^\top A^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \stackrel{\mathbf{x}_2}{=} \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 = (2) \\
\lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &\stackrel{(1)}{=} \mathbf{x}_1^\top A \mathbf{x}_2 \stackrel{(2)}{=} \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \\
\lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \\
(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= 0 \wedge \lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2 \\
\mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

□

*Proof.* (1) fast concept

$$\begin{aligned}
(A\mathbf{x}_1)^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= (\mathbf{x}_1^\top A^\top) \mathbf{x}_2 \stackrel{\text{symmetric}}{=} (\mathbf{x}_1^\top A) \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_1^\top (A\mathbf{x}_2) \\
(L) &= (A\mathbf{x}_1)^\top \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_1^\top (A\mathbf{x}_2) = (R) \\
(L) &= (A\mathbf{x}_1)^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \stackrel{(e_1)}{=} (\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1)^\top \mathbf{x}_2 = \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \\
(R) &= \mathbf{x}_1^\top (A\mathbf{x}_2) \stackrel{(e_2)}{=} \mathbf{x}_1^\top (\lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2) = \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \\
\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= (A\mathbf{x}_1)^\top \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_1^\top (A\mathbf{x}_2) = \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 \\
\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2 &= \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_2
\end{aligned}$$

□

### Theorem 23.3.

$$\left\{
\begin{array}{ll}
\begin{cases} A \in \mathcal{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) & \text{real matrix} \\ A^\top = A & \text{symmetric matrix} \end{cases} & \text{real symmetric matrix} \\
\begin{cases} A\mathbf{x}_1 = \lambda \mathbf{x}_1 \\ \mathbf{x}_2^\top \mathbf{x}_1 = 0 \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{x}_2 \perp \mathbf{x}_1 \end{cases} & \begin{array}{l} (e) \\ (o) \end{array} \\
\Downarrow \\
A\mathbf{x}_2 \perp \mathbf{x}_1 \Leftrightarrow (A\mathbf{x}_2)^\top \mathbf{x}_1 = 0
\end{array}
\right.$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
(A\mathbf{x}_2)^\top \mathbf{x}_1 &= (\mathbf{x}_2^\top A^\top) \mathbf{x}_1 \stackrel{\text{symmetric}}{=} (\mathbf{x}_2^\top A) \mathbf{x}_1 \\
&= \mathbf{x}_2^\top (A\mathbf{x}_1) \stackrel{(e)}{=} \mathbf{x}_2^\top (\lambda \mathbf{x}_1) \\
&= \lambda \mathbf{x}_2^\top \mathbf{x}_1 \stackrel{(o)}{=} \lambda \cdot 0 = 0 \\
(A\mathbf{x}_2)^\top \mathbf{x}_1 &= 0 \Leftrightarrow A\mathbf{x}_2 \perp \mathbf{x}_1
\end{aligned}$$

□



## Chapter 24

# tangent half-angle formula

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tangent\\_half-angle\\_formula](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tangent_half-angle_formula)

<https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-tw/正切半角公式>

正切半形公式又稱萬能公式

以切表弦公式，簡稱以切表弦



## **Chapter 25**

# **homogeneous coordinate**

<https://youtu.be/EKN7dTJ4ep8?si=8woajZxbqPfEXhdK&t=2263>

<https://youtu.be/1z1S2kQKXD8?si=71o339yBtIQYhWtj&t=3082>



# Chapter 26

## Archimedean property

### 26.1 integer Archimedean property

### 26.2 rational Archimedean property

<https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/3699023/proof-the-the-field-of-rational-numbers-has-the-archimedean-property>

<https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/1919829/proving-the-archimedean-properties-of-rational-numbers>

### 26.3 real Archimedean property



# Chapter 27

## Matplotlib / matplotlib

- tikzplotlib<sup>[13.5]</sup>: Python<sup>[12]</sup> matplotlib<sup>[27]</sup> export to TikZ<sup>[13]</sup> .tex

### 27.1 Timothy H. Wu

巫孟叡

- API = application programming interface
  - functional<sup>[27.1.1]</sup>
  - object-oriented<sup>[27.1.2]</sup>
    - \* figure
    - \* axes
    - \* subplot

[https://matplotlib.org/stable/tutorials/introductory/quick\\_start.html](https://matplotlib.org/stable/tutorials/introductory/quick_start.html)

<https://pbpython.com/effective-matplotlib.html>

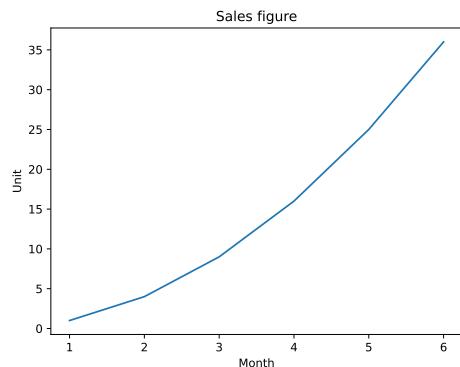
<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/84847/can-i-use-webp-images-in-latex>

You probably need to convert the image to png.

#### 27.1.1 funcitonal API

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
plt.title('Sales figure')
plt.xlabel('Month')
plt.ylabel('Unit')
plt.plot(a1, a2) # this doesn't
↪ actually show the plot.
# plt.show() This is automatically
↪ called for Jupyter notebook.
```



---

To plot a scatterplot, call `scatter()` instead of `plot()`.

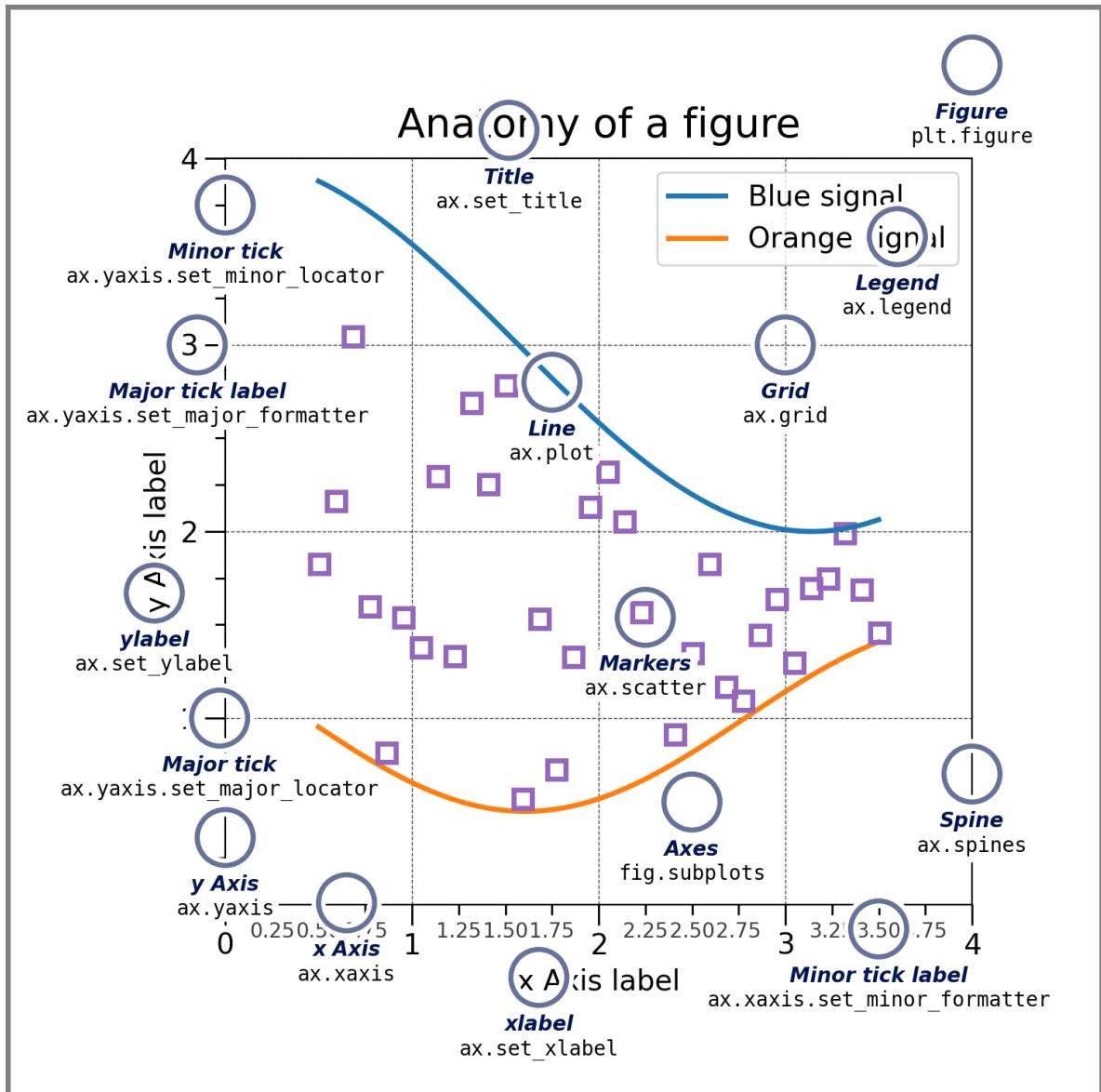


Figure 27.1: matplotlib figure anatomy

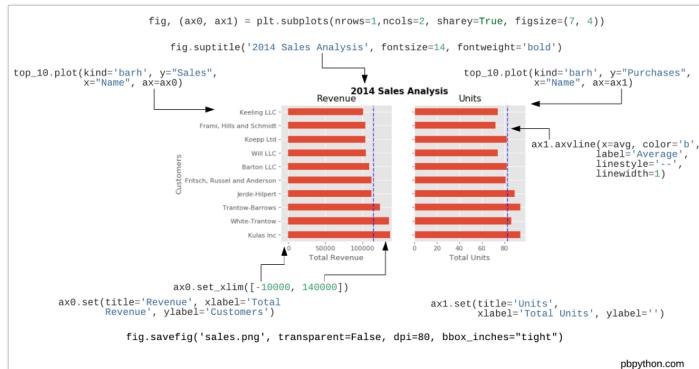


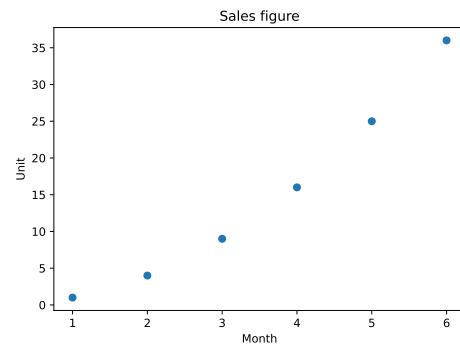
Figure 27.2: matplotlib subplot anatomy

```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
plt.title('Sales figure')
plt.xlabel('Month')
plt.ylabel('Unit')
plt.scatter(a1, a2) # instead of
↪ plot.plot(), use scatter() to show
↪ scatter plot

```

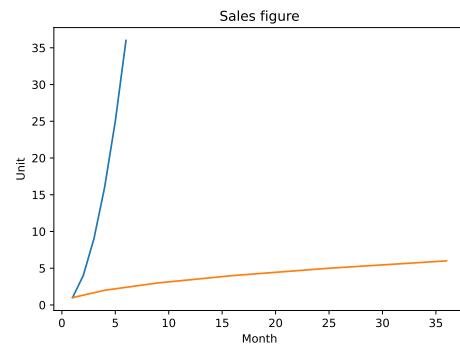


```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
plt.title('Sales figure')
plt.xlabel('Month')
plt.ylabel('Unit')
plt.plot(a1, a2)
plt.plot(a2, a1)

```



The behavior of the functional API is stateful. What's stateful? An example is when you read a text file. When you `open()` a text file to read, the library read the next line every time you call `readline()`. It remembers where you left off, despite the fact that you do not give it the position to read from. This behavior of the library is called **stateful**. The way we've used Matplotlib is also **stateful**. And everytime, `plot.show()` is called (and it automatically gets called on cell ends), some state about plots is reset. We can see that here:

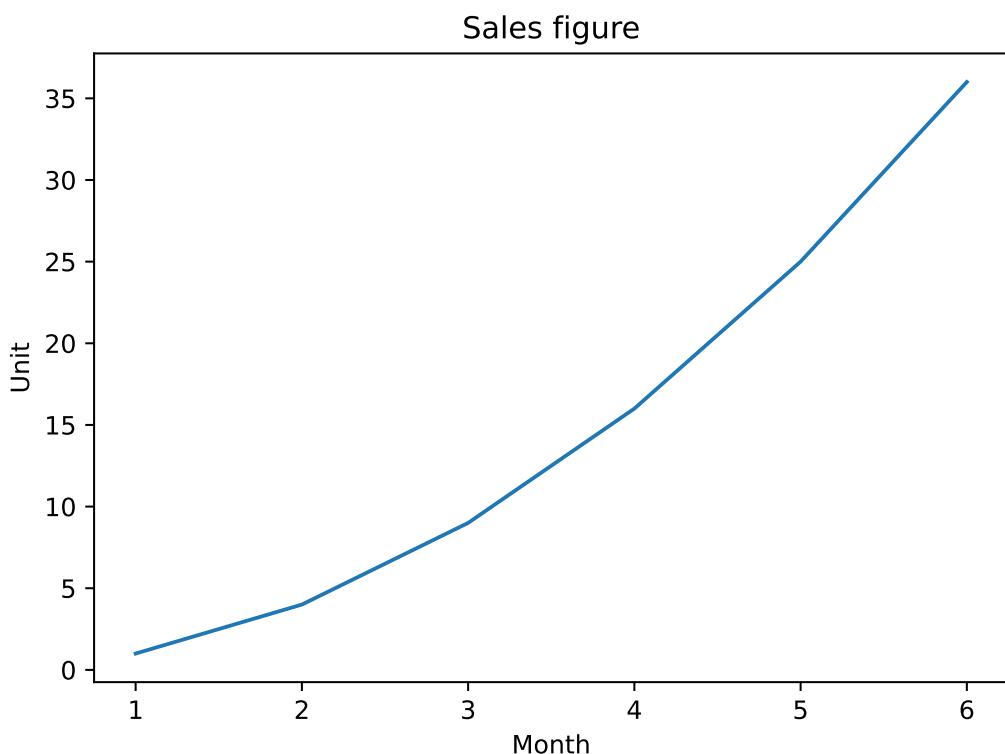
```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

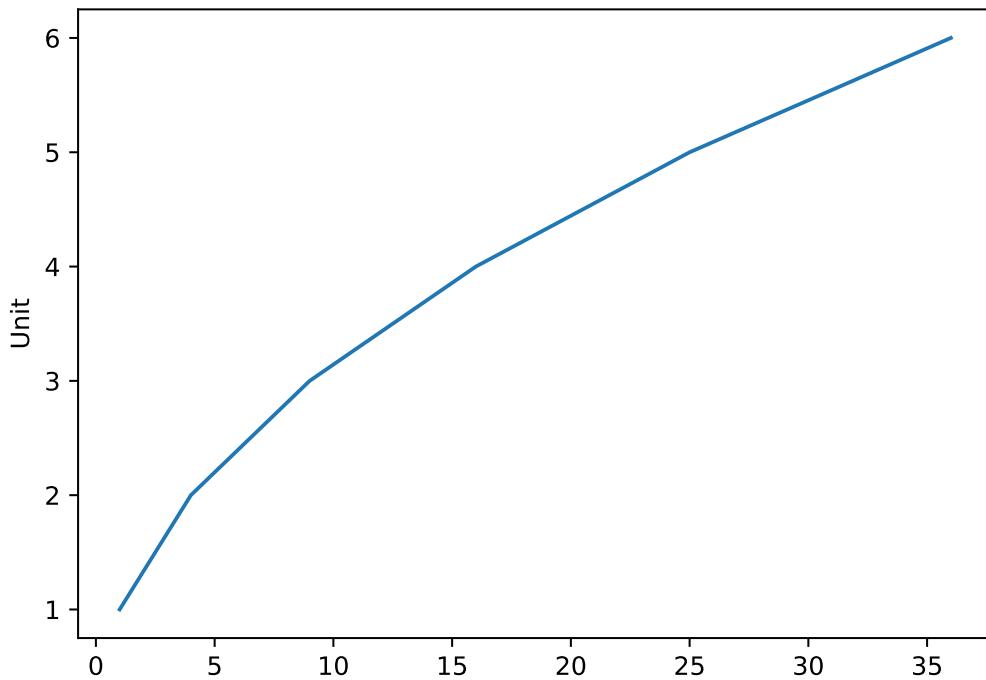
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]

```

```
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
plt.title('Sales figure')
plt.xlabel('Month')
plt.ylabel('Unit')
plt.plot(a1, a2)
```



```
plt.plot(a2, a1)
plt.ylabel('Unit')
```



It makes two graphs instead of one. Also note that `ylabel()` was called after `plot()`, and it is still shown before `plot.show()` but `Sales` Figure plot title and other labels don't show up on this graph. Because every time `plot.show()` is called, things are reset. This is a **stateful API** we're using. The functional APIs are used when you plot Matplotlib by calling on `pyplot` module level API (module level functions).

### 27.1.2 object-oriented API

In object-oriented API, we're getting two type of objects. One is `Figure`, the other one is `Axes`. `Figure` is the *canvas* of the plot. In English, `axes` is the plural form of `axis`. We're talking about the axis in x axis and y axis. Since one `plot` consists of both axis, in Matplotlib the object that represents one plot is called `Axes`. Since it's an object. We'll call it "a" axes.

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
print("fig is of type:", type(fig))

## fig is of type: <class 'matplotlib.figure.Figure'>

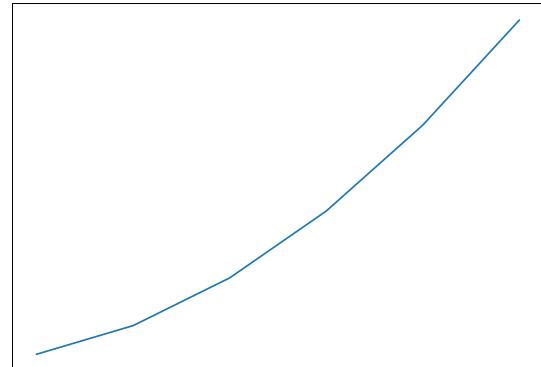
ax1 = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1]) # [left, bottom, width, height]
print("ax1 is of type:", type(ax1))
# ax1.plot(a1, a2)
```

```
## ax1 is of type: <class 'matplotlib.axes._axes.Axes'>
```

1. Call `figure()` to get a Figure type
2. Call `add_axes()` to get a `ax1` type `ax1 = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1]) # [left, bottom, width, height]`
- The list given to `add_axes()` is the rectangular region of where to show the plot:
  - Bottom left corner at  $x=0, y=0$ , width and height of both 1, 1

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

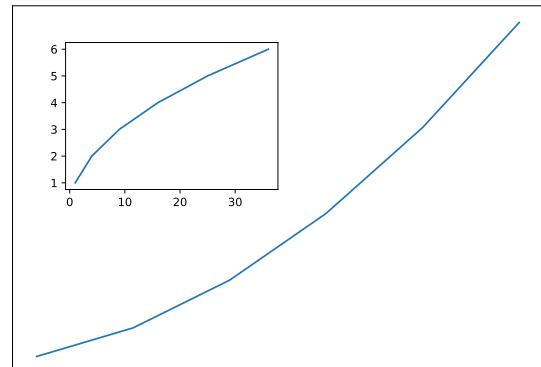
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
# print("fig is of type:", type(fig))
ax1 = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1]) #
↪ [left, bottom, width, height]
# print("ax1 is of type:", type(ax1))
ax1.plot(a1, a2)
```




---

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

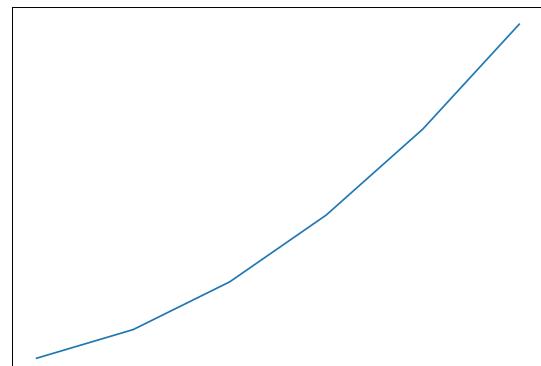
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
ax1 = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
ax1.plot(a1, a2)
ax2 = fig.add_axes([0.1, 0.5, .4, .4])
ax2.plot(a2, a1)
```




---

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
ax.plot(a1, a2)
ax.set_xlabel('Time')
ax.set_ylabel('Unit')
ax.set_title('Sales figure')
# alternatively:
# ax.set(xlabel='Time', ylabel='Unit',
↪ title='Sales figure')
```



### 27.1.2.1 Configure the figure size and DPI

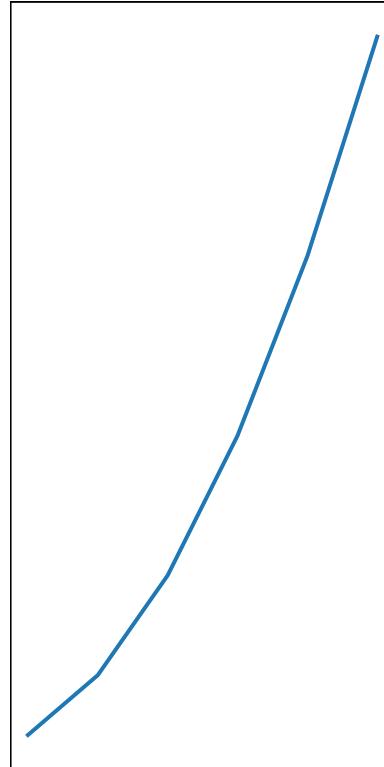
Get image size for the figure object. 6 by 4 is the default.

```
fig.get_size_inches()  
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
fig = plt.figure()  
fig.get_size_inches()  
  
## array([6.5, 4.5])
```

---

```
fig = plt.figure(figsize=(2, 4))
```

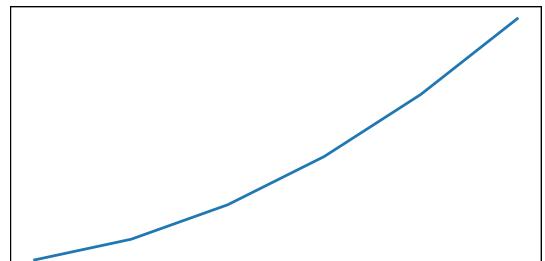
```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,  
↪ 5, 6]  
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]  
fig = plt.figure(figsize=(2, 4))  
# you can also set after getting the  
↪ figure  
# fig.set_size_inches((12, 2))  
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])  
ax.plot(a1, a2)
```



---

```
fig.set_size_inches((4, 2))
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,  
↪ 5, 6]  
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]  
fig = plt.figure()  
# you can also set after getting the  
↪ figure  
fig.set_size_inches((4, 2))  
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])  
ax.plot(a1, a2)
```



DPI = dots per inch

Get image DPI for the figure object. 100 is the default here.

```
fig.get_dpi()  
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
fig = plt.figure()  
fig.get_dpi()
```

```
## 100.0
```

---

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]  
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]  
fig = plt.figure()  
# you can also set after getting the figure  
fig.set_size_inches((12, 2))  
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])  
ax.plot(a1, a2)  
plt.title('Sales figure')  
fig.get_dpi()
```

```
## 100.0
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
  
# Subplots handles add_axes for you according to the number of rows and columns  
fig, axes = plt.subplots(nrows=2, ncols=2, figsize=(6, 3))  
# axes is a numpy array, you can use it like using a list.  
print(axes)
```

---

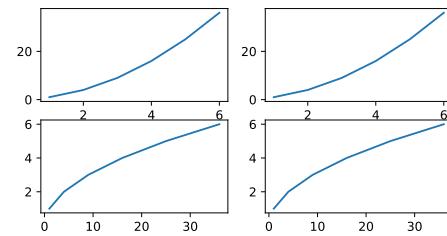
```
## [[<Axes: > <Axes: >]  
##   [<Axes: > <Axes: >]]
```

```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
# Subplots handles add_axes for you
↪ according to the number of rows
↪ and columns
fig, axes = plt.subplots(nrows=2,
↪ ncols=2, figsize=(6, 3))
# axes is a numpy array, you can use
↪ it like using a list.
# print(axes)
axes[0][0].plot(a1, a2)
axes[0][1].plot(a1, a2)
axes[1][0].plot(a2, a1)
axes[1][1].plot(a2, a1)

```



### 27.1.2.3 color and linestyle

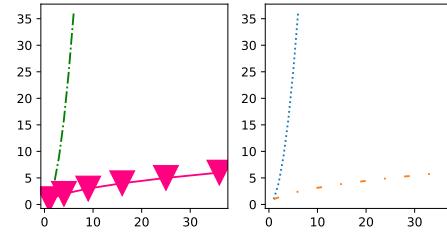
- Color
  - <https://matplotlib.org/stable/tutorials/colors/colors.html>
- line-style (ls)
  - [https://matplotlib.org/stable/gallery/lines\\_bars\\_and\\_markers/linestyles.html](https://matplotlib.org/stable/gallery/lines_bars_and_markers/linestyles.html)
- marker
- linewidth (lw)

```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
↪ 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
# Subplots handles add_axes for you
↪ according to the number of rows
↪ and columns
fig, axes = plt.subplots(nrows=1,
↪ ncols=2, figsize=(6, 3))
# axes is a numpy array
axes[0].plot(a1, a2, color='green',
↪ linestyle='-.')
axes[0].plot(a2, a1, color=(1, 0,
↪ 0.5), marker='v', markersize=20)
axes[1].plot(a1, a2,
↪ linestyle='dotted')
axes[1].plot(a2, a1, linestyle=(0, (3,
↪ 10, 1, 10)))

```



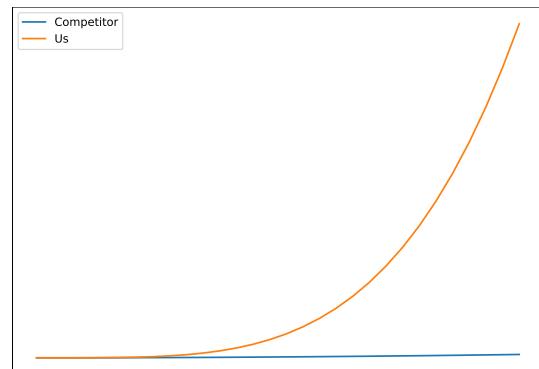
### 27.1.2.4 other inputs

- NumPy array
- Pandas series

### 27.1.2.5 legend

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import numpy as np

x = np.linspace(0, 10, 30)
y = x * x
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
line1 = ax.plot(x, y,
                 label="Competitor")
line2 = ax.plot(x, y**2, label="Us")
ax.legend()
```



### 27.1.2.6 customize style

predefined styles

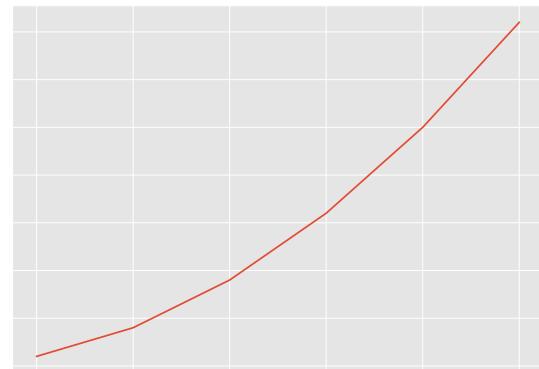
```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

print(plt.style.available)

## ['Solarize_Light2', '_classic_test_patch', '_mpl-gallery', '_mpl-gallery-nogrid', 'bmh'
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4,
                     # 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
plt.style.use('ggplot')
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
ax.plot(a1, a2)
```



restore default style

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

plt.style.use('default') # But strangely enough figure size gets changed still

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"] = (6, 4)
plt.rcParams["figure.dpi"] = 100
```

### 27.1.2.7 save to file

`savefig` saves image to file. We also set the `bbox_inches` parameter to `tight` to make sure the image doesn't get out of the image bound.

save to .png

```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
ax.plot(a1, a2)
fig.savefig('out.png', bbox_inches = 'tight')

```

save to .pdf

```

import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

a1 = list(range(1, 7)) # [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
a2 = [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36]
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_axes([0, 0, 1, 1])
ax.plot(a1, a2)
fig.savefig('out.pdf', bbox_inches = 'tight')

```

### 27.1.3 Seaborn

- Kimberly Fessel

- visually explained
- Seaborn
- Matplotlib
- Pandas
- iPyWidgets

- Seaborn

- figure-level plot
- axes-level plot

R or RStudio run Python with installing packages or modules by using `reticulate`, R package and directly using Anaconda `conda` environment for convenience, instead of `virtualenv`

[https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/articles/python\\_packages.html](https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/articles/python_packages.html)

```

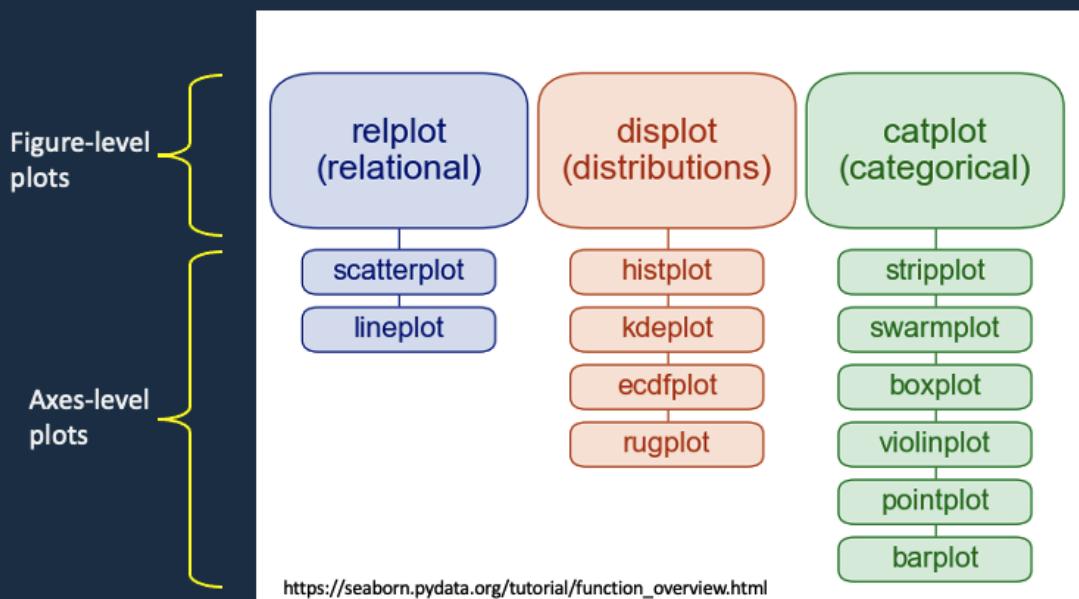
library(reticulate)

## Warning: package 'reticulate' was built under R version 4.2.3
conda_list()

```

##	name	python
## 1	base	D:\\Anaconda3\\python.exe
## 2	fiftyone	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\fiftyone\\python.exe
## 3	keras	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\keras\\python.exe
## 4	labelme	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\labelme\\python.exe
## 5	manim	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\manim\\python.exe
## 6	mmyolo	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\mmyolo\\python.exe
## 7	r-reticulate	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\r-reticulate\\python.exe
## 8	rsconnect-jupyter	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\rsconnect-jupyter\\python.exe
## 9	sandbox	D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\sandbox\\python.exe

## Three main type of Seaborn plots



Yes, that correspond to Matplotlib's concept of figure and axes

Figure 27.3: seaborn plot type

```
## 10      sandbox-3.9      D:\\Anaconda3\\envs\\sandbox-3.9/python.exe
use_condaenv(condaenv = 'sandbox-3.9')

## install Seaborn
# conda_install("r-reticulate", "seaborn")

## import Seaborn (it will be automatically discovered in "r-reticulate")
seaborn <- import("seaborn")
```

### 27.1.3.1 basic

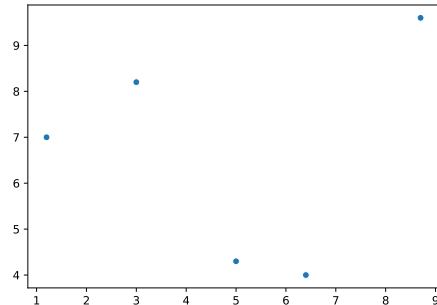
```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt # need it sometimes
import seaborn as sns

sns.set_theme() # set the default theme
```

---

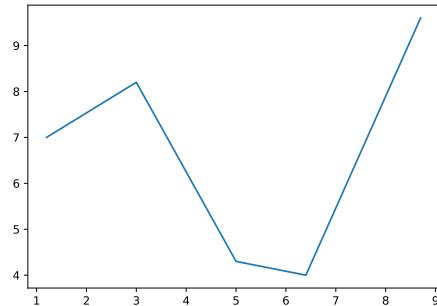
```
import seaborn as sns

x = [3, 5, 1.2, 8.7, 6.4]
y = [8.2, 4.3, 7, 9.6, 4]
sns.scatterplot(x=x, y=y)
```



```
import seaborn as sns

x = [3, 5, 1.2, 8.7, 6.4]
y = [8.2, 4.3, 7, 9.6, 4]
sns.lineplot(x=x, y=y)
```



### 27.1.3.2 data frame

```
sns.load_dataset
```

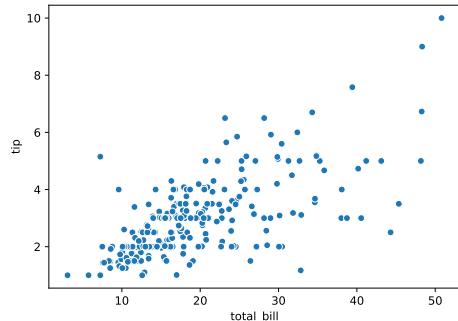
```
import seaborn as sns
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
tips
```

	##	total_bill	tip	sex	smoker	day
## 0	## 0	16.99	1.01	Female	No	Su
## 1	## 1	10.34	1.66	Male	No	Su
## 2	## 2	21.01	3.50	Male	No	Su
## 3	## 3	23.68	3.31	Male	No	Su
## 4	## 4	24.59	3.61	Female	No	Su
## ..	## ..	...	...	...	...	...
## 239	## 239	29.03	5.92	Male	No	Sa
## 240	## 240	27.18	2.00	Female	Yes	Sa
## 241	## 241	22.67	2.00	Male	Yes	Sa
## 242	## 242	17.82	1.75	Male	No	Sa
## 243	## 243	18.78	3.00	Female	No	Thu
##	##	## [244 rows x 7 columns]				

---

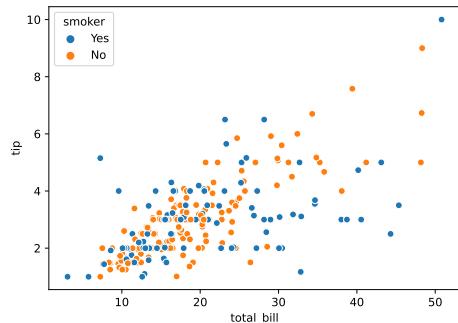
data

```
import seaborn as sns
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.scatterplot(data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 y='tip')
```



hue

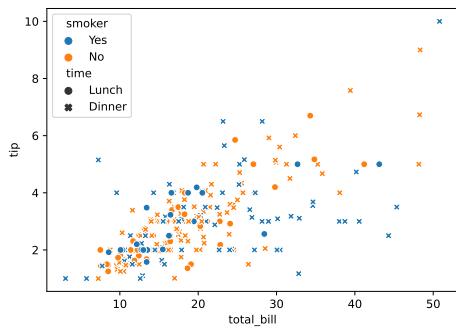
```
import seaborn as sns
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.scatterplot(data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 y='tip',
                 hue='smoker')
```



style

```
import seaborn as sns

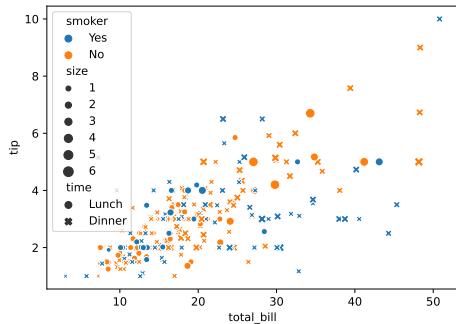
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.scatterplot(data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 y='tip',
                 hue='smoker',
                 style='time')
```



size

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.scatterplot(data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 y='tip',
                 hue='smoker',
                 style='time',
                 size='size')
```



- Legend is covering up the graph, it's getting out of hand. Let's tune the range of x
- `sns.scatterplot()` actually returns something that resembles Matplotlib axis. So we use a Matplotlib axis function:

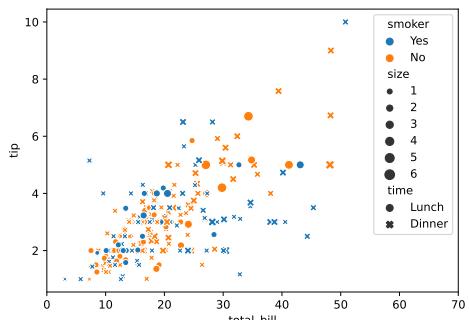
```
ax = sns.scatterplot(...)
```

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/26597116/seaborn-plots-not-showing-up>

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
ax = sns.scatterplot(data=tips,
                     x='total_bill',
                     y='tip',
                     hue='smoker',
                     style='time',
                     size='size')
ax.set_xlim((0, 70))
# alternatively:
# ax.set(xlim=(0, 70))
plt.show()
```

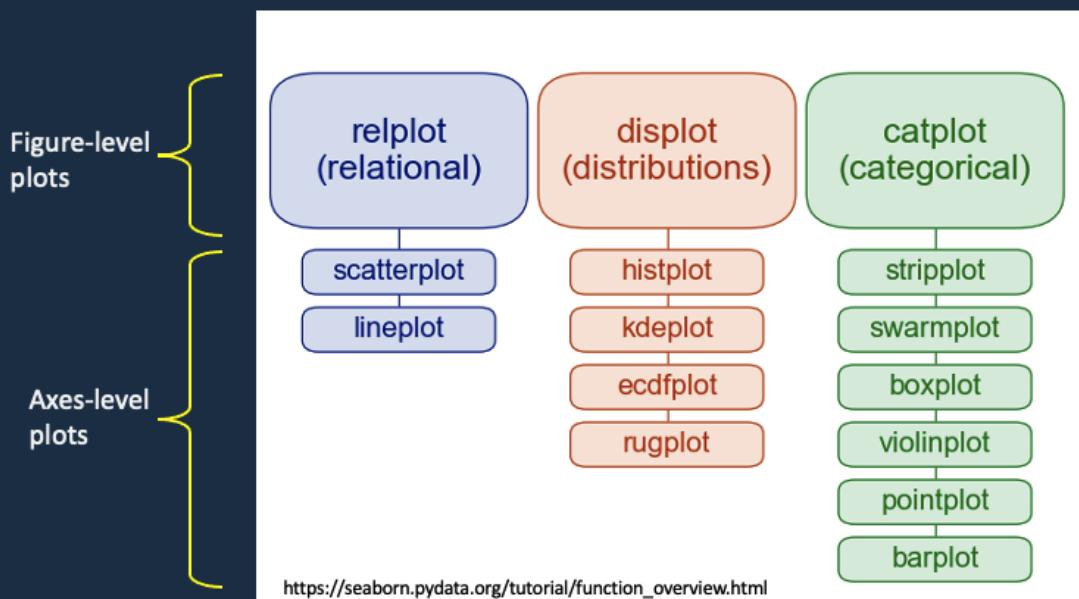
## (0.0, 70.0)



### 27.1.3.3 axis-level plot and figure-level plot

`sns.relpplot`

## Three main type of Seaborn plots

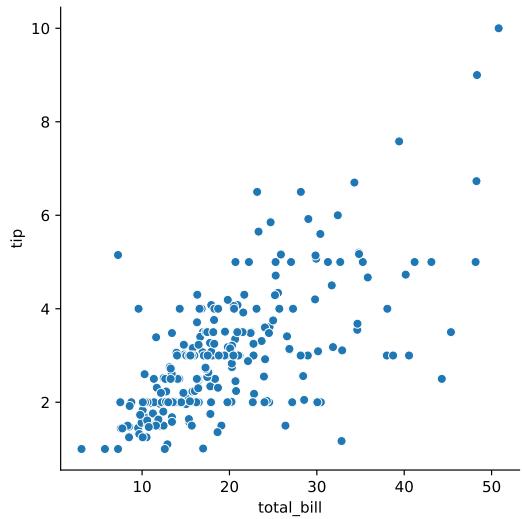


Yes, that correspond to Matplotlib's concept of figure and axes

Figure 27.4: seaborn plot type

```
import seaborn as sns

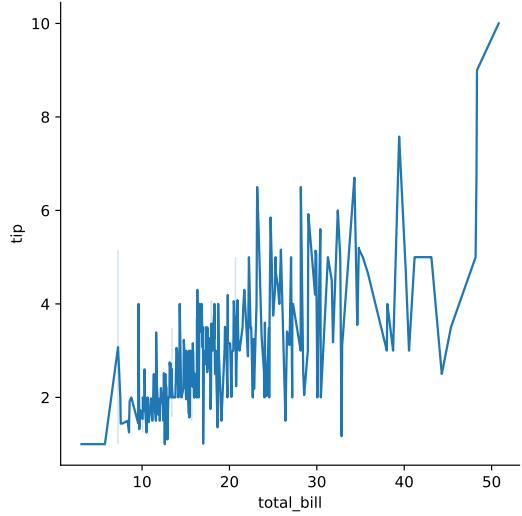
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.relplot(kind='scatter',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill',
            y='tip')
```




---

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.relplot(kind='line',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill',
            y='tip')
```



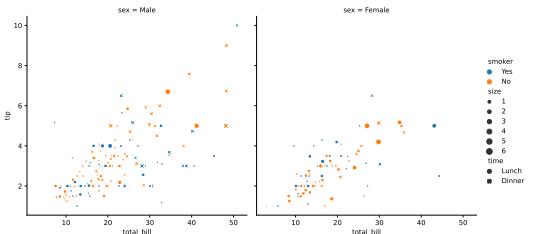
With figure-level plot, we can draw more than one plot (one `axes`).

Here we specify that different `sex` be on different column by specifying `col=sex`.

`col=sex`

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.relplot(kind='scatter',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill',
            y='tip',
            hue='smoker',
            style='time',
            size='size',
            col='sex')
```

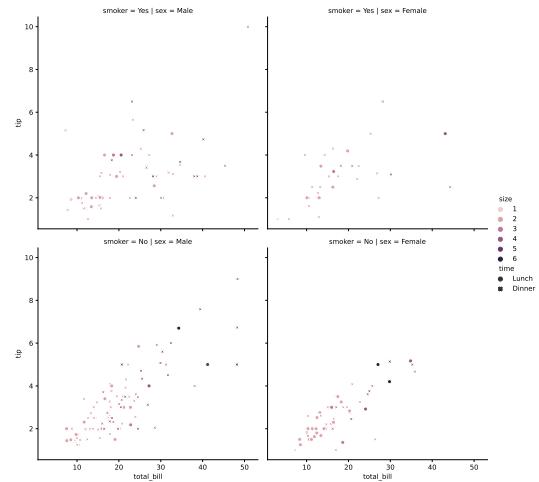


---

```
col=sex row=smoker
```

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.relplot(kind='scatter',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill',
            y='tip',
            style='time',
            hue='size',
            row='smoker',
            col='sex')
```



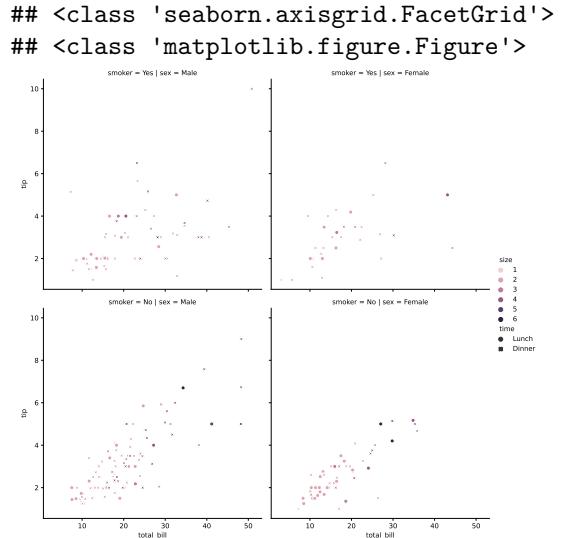
#### 27.1.3.4 accessing figure and axes objects

Recall that Seaborn uses Matplotlib to draw the graphics. So underneath the Seaborn library, you can still access Matplotlib's figure object and axes objects if necessary. The call to figure-level plot returns an object.

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
g = sns.relplot(kind='scatter',
                 data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 y='tip',
                 style='time',
                 hue='size',
                 row='smoker',
                 col='sex')

print(type(g))
print(type(g.fig)) # g.fig gets you
                   ← the Figure
g.fig
```



#### 27.1.3.5 distribution plot

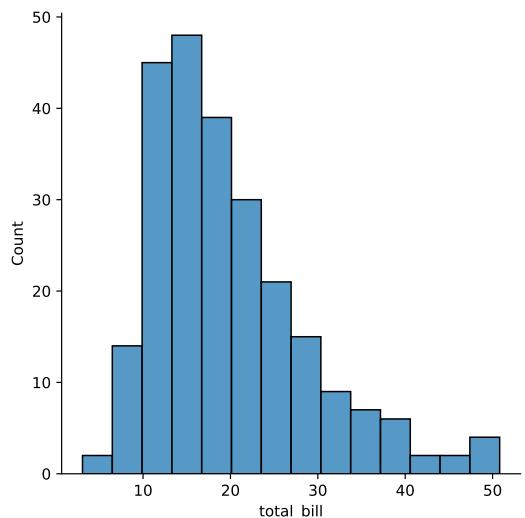
```
sns.displot
```

##### 27.1.3.5.1 histogram

---

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='hist',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill')
```

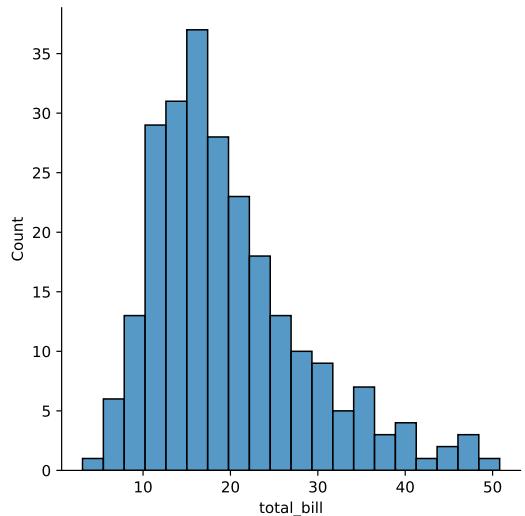


---

bins

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='hist', bins=20,
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill')
```

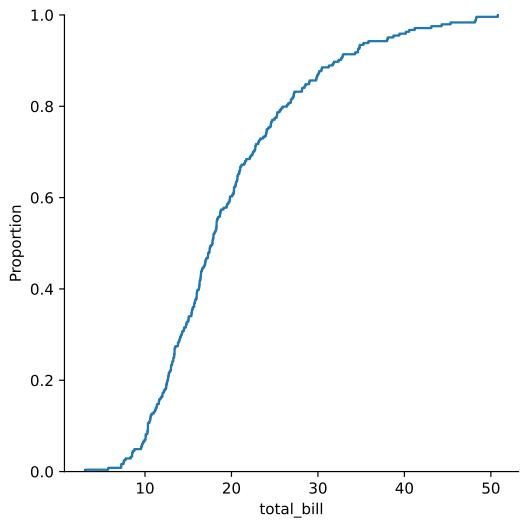


#### 27.1.3.5.2 ECDF = empirical cumulative distrutive function

---

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='ecdf',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill')
```

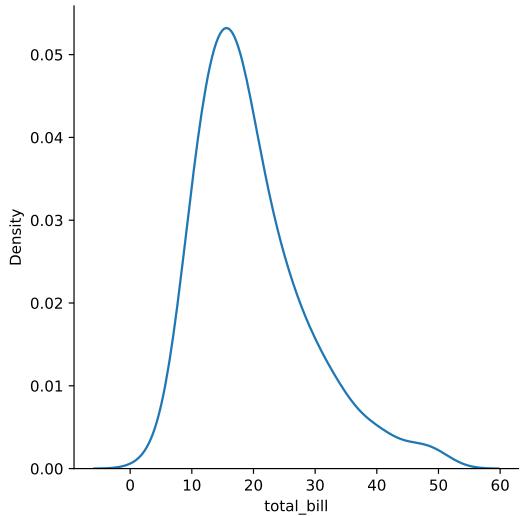


#### 27.1.3.5.3 KDE = kernel density estimation

---

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='kde',
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill')
```

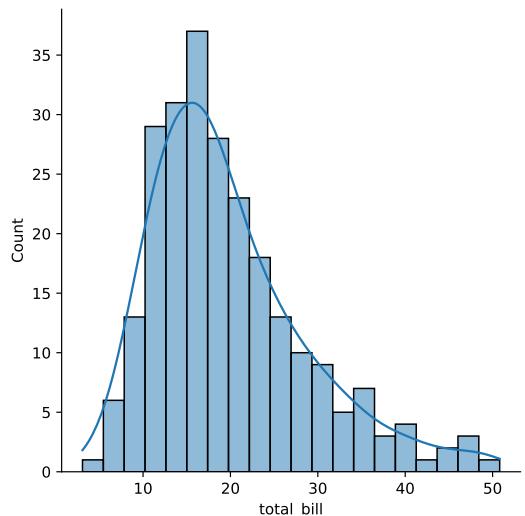


---

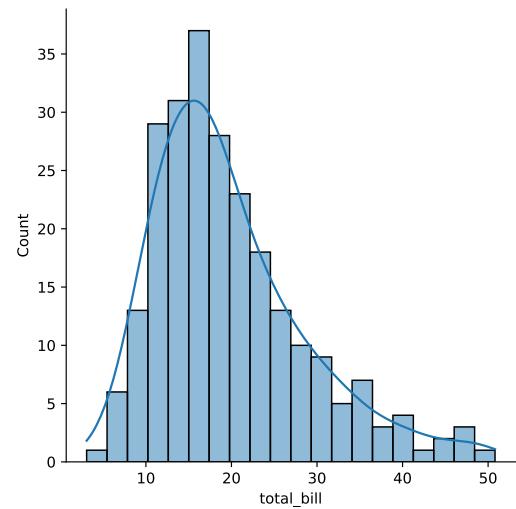
histogram with KDE

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='hist', bins=20,
            kde=True,
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill')
```



## '% This file was created with tikzplotlib'




---

TikZ / `tikzpicture` with PGFplots `axis` by transforming Matplotlib-based Seaborn plot to .tex via Python package `tikzplotlib`

`xlabel={total_bill}`, changed to `xlabel={total bill}`, without `_` in text

---

`X ylabel={Count}`, changed to `ylabel={$\text{Count}$}`,: not necessary to be changed, the problem is `_` in xlabel name

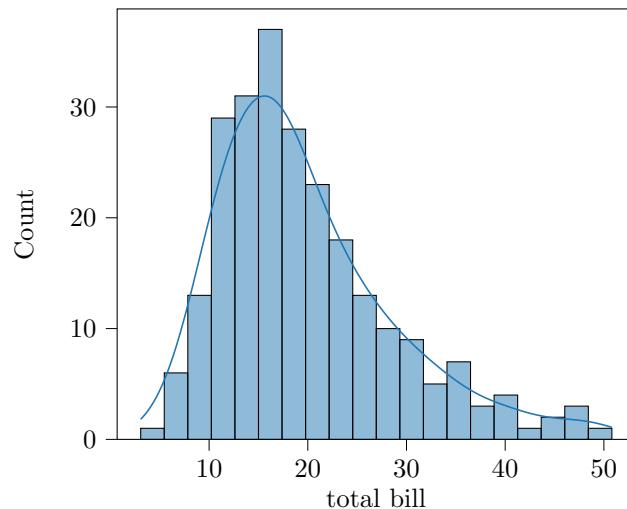
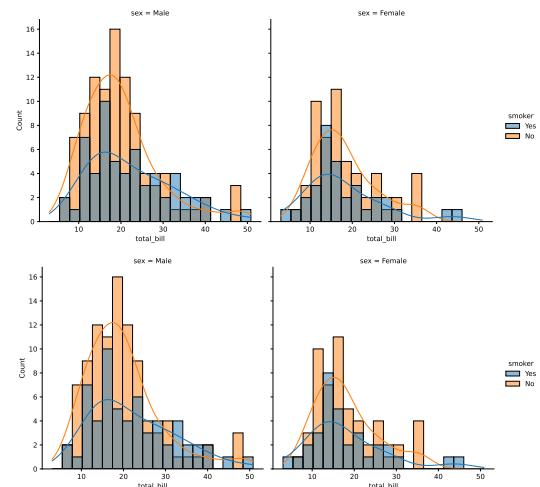


Figure 27.5: tikzplotlib

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.displot(kind='hist', bins=20,
            kde=True,
            data=tips,
            x='total_bill',
            hue='smoker',
            col='sex'
)
```



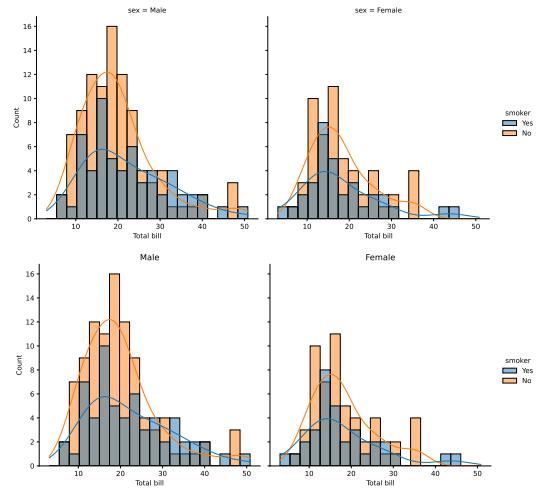
Let's customize the label and title.

```

import seaborn as sns

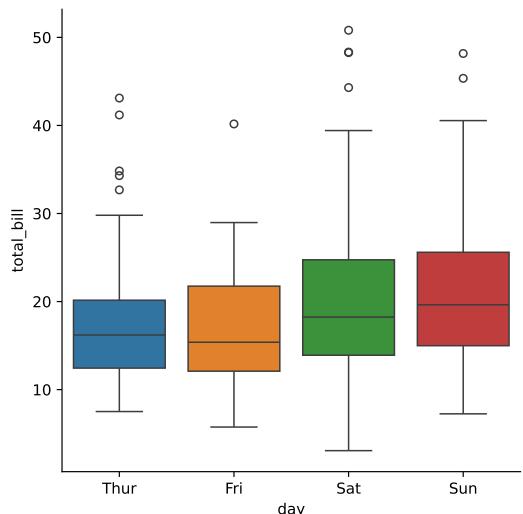
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
g = sns.displot(kind='hist', bins=20,
                 kde=True,
                 data=tips,
                 x='total_bill',
                 hue='smoker',
                 col='sex'
)
g.set(xlabel='Total bill')
g.axes[0][0].set(title='Male')
g.axes[0][1].set(title='Female')
g.fig

```



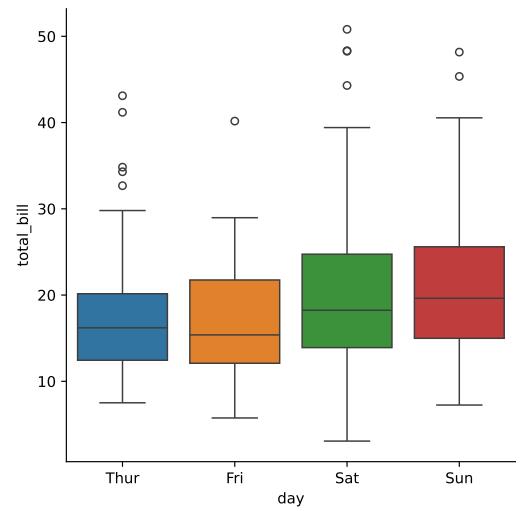
#### 27.1.3.6 categorical plot

`sns.catplot`



```
import seaborn as sns

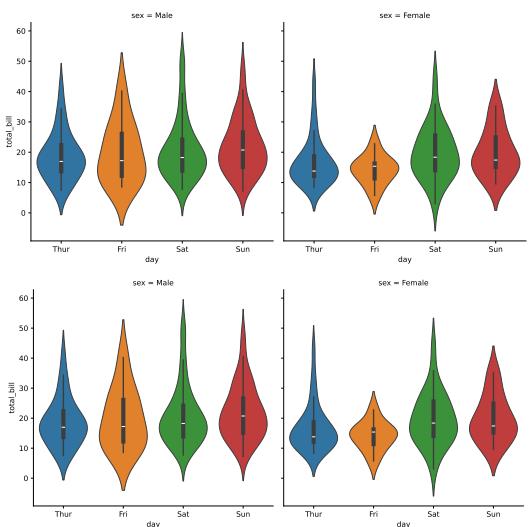
tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.catplot(kind='box',
            data=tips,
            x="day", hue="day",
            y="total_bill"
            )
```




---

```
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.catplot(kind='violin',
            data=tips,
            x="day", hue="day",
            y="total_bill",
            col='sex'
            )
```

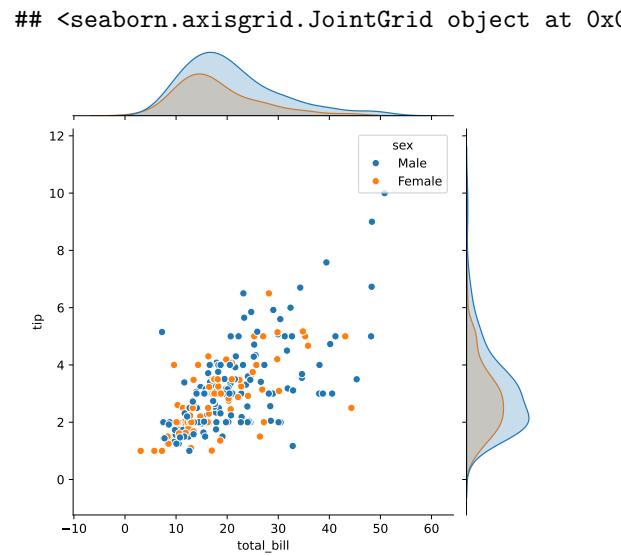


### 27.1.3.7 joint plot

```
sns.jointplot
```

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import seaborn as sns

tips = sns.load_dataset("tips")
sns.jointplot(data=tips,
               x="total_bill",
               y="tip",
               hue='sex'
              )
plt.show()
```

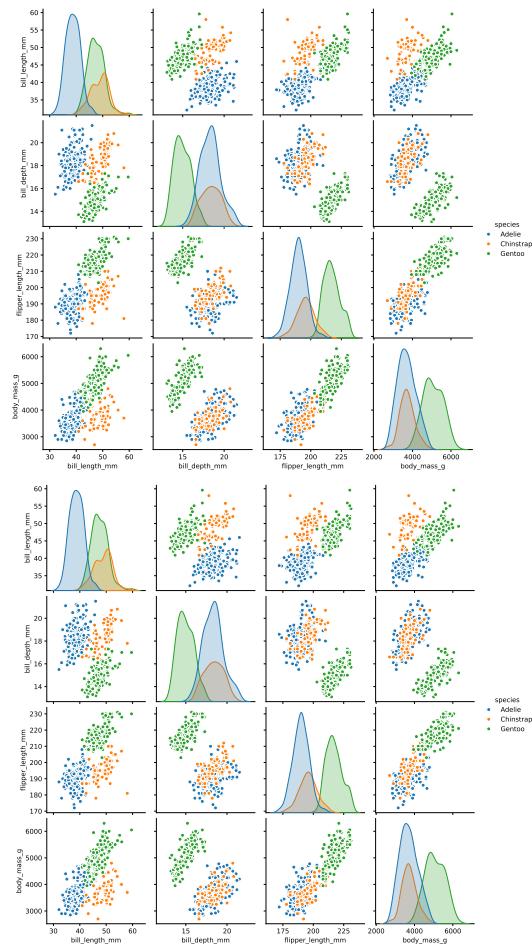


### 27.1.3.8 pair plot

```
sns.pairplot
```

```
import seaborn as sns

penguins =
    sns.load_dataset("penguins")
sns.pairplot(data=penguins,
              hue='species')
```



### 27.1.3.9 palette

Changing the color with Matplotlib's color

A list of color: <https://matplotlib.org/stable/tutorials/colors/colormaps.html>

```
import seaborn as sns

penguins =
    sns.load_dataset("penguins")
sns.pairplot(data=penguins,
             hue='species',
             palette='Pastel1')
```

### 27.1.3.10 volcano plot

### 27.1.3.11 heatmap

## 27.2 export

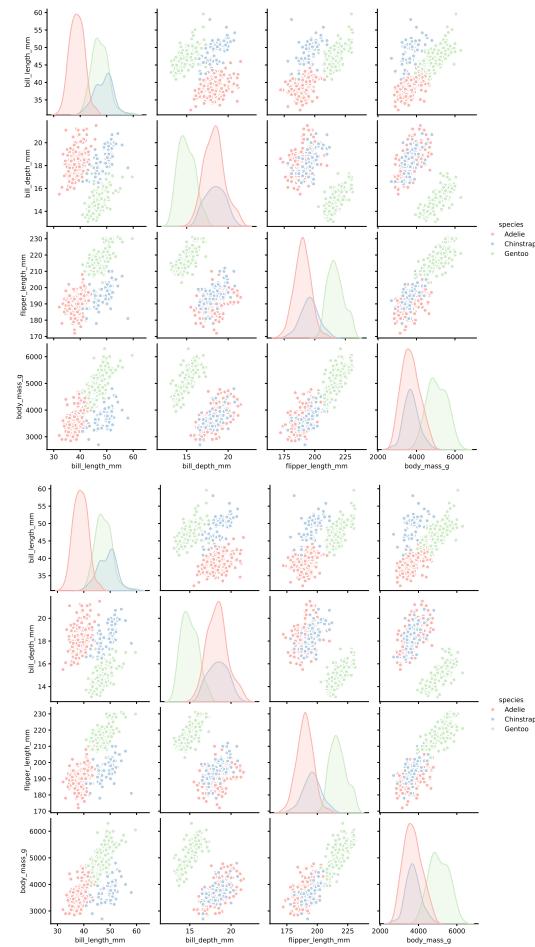
### 27.2.1 .svg

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/24525111/how-can-i-get-the-output-of-a-matplotlib-plot-as-an-svg>

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import seaborn as sns

penguins = sns.load_dataset("penguins")
sns.pairplot(data=penguins,
             hue='species')

plt.savefig("test.svg")
# plt.savefig("test.svg", dpi=1200)
```



## 27.2.2 .eps

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/16183462/saving-images-in-python-at-a-very-high-quality>

The PostScript backend does not support transparency; partially transparent artists will be rendered opaque.

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import seaborn as sns

penguins = sns.load_dataset("penguins")
sns.pairplot(data=penguins,
              hue='species')

plt.savefig("test.eps")
# plt.savefig("test.eps", dpi=1200)
```

# Chapter 28

## survival analysis

28.1 Python package `tableone`

28.2 Python package `lifelines`



# Chapter 29

## Manim

### 29.1 VSCode extension: Manim Sideview

<https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=Rickaym.manim-sideview>

ffmpeg.exe placed in the same folder with .py

VSCode Ctrl + Shift + P: open Mobject gallery

### 29.2 installation

<https://docs.manim.community/en/stable/installation.html>

#### 29.2.1 Conda

conda install -c conda-forge manim

### 29.3 quickstart

<https://docs.manim.community/en/stable/tutorials/quickstart.html>

[https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att\\_video\\_autoplay.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att_video_autoplay.asp)

[https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att\\_video\\_loop.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att_video_loop.asp)

```
from manim import *

class CreateCircle(Scene):
    def construct(self):
        circle = Circle() # create a
        ← circle
        circle.set_fill(PINK,
        ← opacity=0.5) # set the color and
        ← transparency
        self.play(Create(circle)) # ← show the circle on screen
```

manim -pql scene.py CreateCircle



# Chapter 30

## ggplot2

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#chap:system>

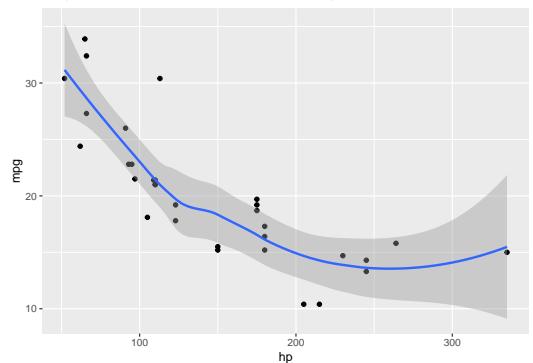
Modern Statistical Graphics [section 5.1](#)

- <https://www.rdocumentation.org/> to search function
- ggplot2
  - <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/index.html> to search ggplot2 function
  - panel = layer
    - \* geom = geometric objects / geometry = element
      - element
    - \* statistic
    - \* scale
    - \* coordinate system
    - \* facet

```
library(ggplot2)

p <- ggplot(aes(x = hp, y = mpg), data
  = mtcars) +
  geom_point() # layer of scatterplot
  p + geom_smooth(method = "loess") #  
  add layer of smooth
```

```
## Warning: package 'ggplot2' was built under R version 3.5.2
## `geom_smooth()` using formula = 'y ~ x'
```

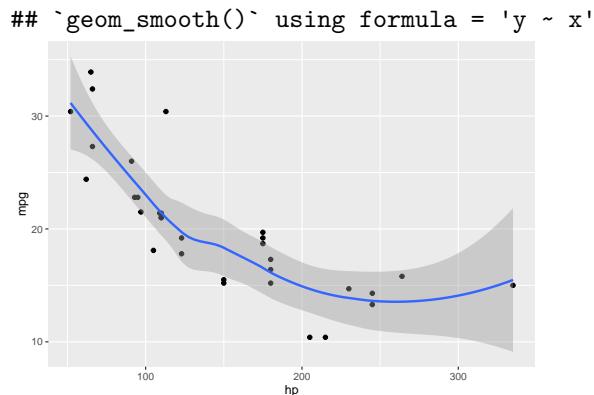


### 30.1 geom

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#section-13>

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = hp, y = mpg), data =
  mtcars) +
  geom_point() +
  geom_smooth(method = "loess")
```



points [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_point.html?q=geom\\_point#null](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_point.html?q=geom_point#null)

**geom\_point**

smoothed conditional means [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_smooth.html?q=geom\\_sm#null](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_smooth.html?q=geom_sm#null)

Aids the eye in seeing patterns in the presence of overplotting. **geom\_smooth()** and **stat\_smooth()** are effectively aliases: they both use the same arguments. Use **stat\_smooth()** if you want to display the results with a non-standard geom.

**geom\_smooth**

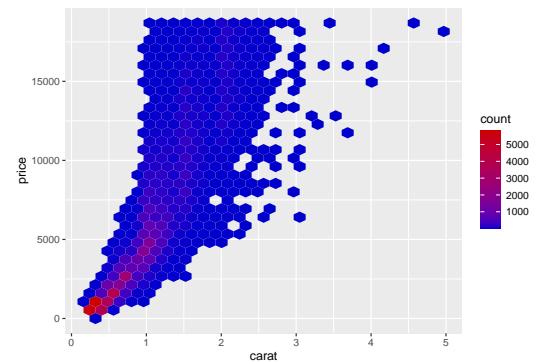
**stat\_smooth**

**method** Smoothing method (function) to use, accepts either NULL or a character vector, e.g. "lm", "glm", "gam", "loess" or a function, e.g. MASS::rlm or mgcv::gam, **stats::lm**, or **stats::loess**. "auto" is also accepted for backwards compatibility. It is equivalent to NULL.

```
# install.packages("hexbin")
```

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = carat, y = price), data
  = diamonds) +
  geom_hex() +
  scale_fill_gradient(low = "blue3",
  high = "red3")
```

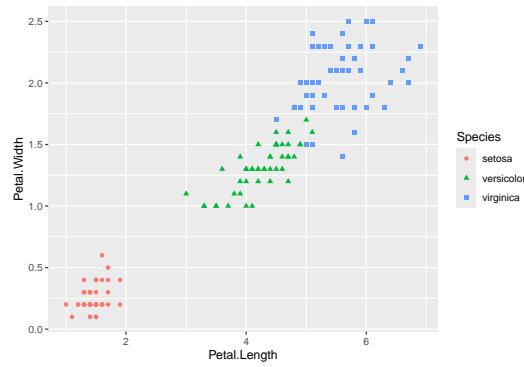


gradient color scales [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale\\_gradient.html?q=scale\\_fill\\_gradie#ref-usage](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale_gradient.html?q=scale_fill_gradie#ref-usage)

[https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale\\_gradient.html?q=scale\\_fill\\_gradient#ref-examples](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale_gradient.html?q=scale_fill_gradient#ref-examples)

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = Petal.Length, y =
  Petal.Width), data = iris) +
  geom_point(aes(color = Species,
    shape = Species))
```



basic plot system

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/elements.html#sec:points>

```
# iris species converted to type
# integer 1, 2, 3 for further using
# vectors
idx <- as.integer(iris[["Species"]])
plot(iris[, 3:4],
  pch = c(24, 21, 25)[idx],
  col = c("black", "red",
    "blue")[idx], panel.first =
  grid())
)
legend("topleft",
  legend = levels(iris[["Species"]]),
  col = c("black", "red", "blue"), pch
  = c(24, 21, 25), bty = "n"
)
```

plot <https://www.rdocumentation.org/packages/graphics/versions/3.6.2/topics/plot.default>

**pch** a vector of **plotting characters** or symbols: see **points**.

**col** The **colors** for lines and points. Multiple colors can be specified so that each point can be given its own color. If there are fewer colors than points they are recycled in the standard fashion. Lines will all be plotted in the first colour specified.

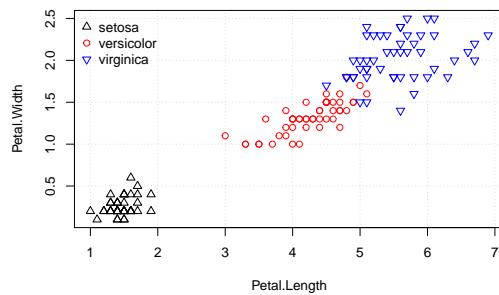
**panel.first** an ‘expression’ to be evaluated after the plot axes are set up but before any plotting takes place. This can be useful for drawing **background grids** or **scatterplot smooths**. Note that this works by lazy evaluation: passing this argument from other plot methods may well not work since it may be evaluated too early.

**legend** <https://www.rdocumentation.org/packages/graphics/versions/3.6.2/topics/legend>

**bty** the **type of box** to be drawn around the legend. The allowed values are “o” (the default) and “n”.

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/10108073/plot-legends-without-border-and-with-white-background>

Use option **bty = "n"** in legend to remove the box around the legend.



**legend** a character or expression vector of length  $\geq 1$  to appear in the legend. Other objects will be coerced by [as.graphicsAnnot](#)



### 30.1.1 basic plot system decomposition

	Sepal.Length	Sepal.Width	Petal.Length
## 1	5.1	3.5	1.4
## 2	4.9	3.0	1.4
## 3	4.7	3.2	1.3
## 4	4.6	3.1	1.5
## 5	5.0	3.6	1.4
## 6	5.4	3.9	1.7
## 7	4.6	3.4	1.4
## 8	5.0	3.4	1.5
## 9	4.4	2.9	1.4
## 10	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 11	5.4	3.7	1.5
## 12	4.8	3.4	1.6
## 13	4.8	3.0	1.4
## 14	4.3	3.0	1.1
## 15	5.8	4.0	1.2
## 16	5.7	4.4	1.5
## 17	5.4	3.9	1.3
## 18	5.1	3.5	1.4
## 19	5.7	3.8	1.7
## 20	5.1	3.8	1.5
## 21	5.4	3.4	1.7
## 22	5.1	3.7	1.5
## 23	4.6	3.6	1.0
## 24	5.1	3.3	1.7
## 25	4.8	3.4	1.9
## 26	5.0	3.0	1.6
## 27	5.0	3.4	1.6
## 28	5.2	3.5	1.5
## 29	5.2	3.4	1.4
## 30	4.7	3.2	1.6
## 31	4.8	3.1	1.6
## 32	5.4	3.4	1.5
## 33	5.2	4.1	1.5
## 34	5.5	4.2	1.4
## 35	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 36	5.0	3.2	1.2
## 37	5.5	3.5	1.3
## 38	4.9	3.6	1.4
## 39	4.4	3.0	1.3
## 40	5.1	3.4	1.5
## 41	5.0	3.5	1.3
## 42	4.5	2.3	1.3
## 43	4.4	3.2	1.3
## 44	5.0	3.5	1.6
## 45	5.1	3.8	1.9
## 46	4.8	3.0	1.4
## 47	5.1	3.8	1.6
## 48	4.6	3.2	1.4
## 49	5.3	3.7	1.5
## 50	5.0	3.3	1.4
## 51	7.0	3.2	4.7
## 52	6.4	3.2	4.5
## 53	6.9	3.1	4.9
## 54	5.5	3.0	4.6
## 55	5.0	3.4	4.5
## 56	5.4	3.9	4.7
## 57	4.9	3.1	4.6
## 58	5.8	4.0	1.2
## 59	5.7	4.4	1.5
## 60	5.4	3.9	1.3
## 61	5.1	3.6	1.5
## 62	5.7	4.2	1.0
## 63	5.1	3.3	1.7
## 64	5.4	3.4	1.5
## 65	5.1	3.0	1.6
## 66	5.0	3.4	1.6
## 67	5.5	4.2	1.4
## 68	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 69	5.0	3.2	1.2
## 70	5.4	3.5	1.3
## 71	5.1	3.8	1.5
## 72	5.7	4.4	1.0
## 73	5.1	3.3	1.7
## 74	5.4	3.4	1.5
## 75	5.1	3.0	1.6
## 76	5.0	3.4	1.6
## 77	5.5	4.2	1.4
## 78	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 79	5.0	3.2	1.2
## 80	5.4	3.5	1.3
## 81	5.1	3.8	1.5
## 82	5.7	4.4	1.0
## 83	5.1	3.3	1.7
## 84	5.4	3.4	1.5
## 85	5.1	3.0	1.6
## 86	5.0	3.4	1.6
## 87	5.5	4.2	1.4
## 88	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 89	5.0	3.2	1.2
## 90	5.4	3.5	1.3
## 91	5.1	3.8	1.5
## 92	5.7	4.4	1.0
## 93	5.1	3.3	1.7
## 94	5.4	3.4	1.5
## 95	5.1	3.0	1.6
## 96	5.0	3.4	1.6
## 97	5.5	4.2	1.4
## 98	4.9	3.1	1.5
## 99	5.0	3.2	1.2
## 100	5.4	3.5	1.3

```
iris$Species
```

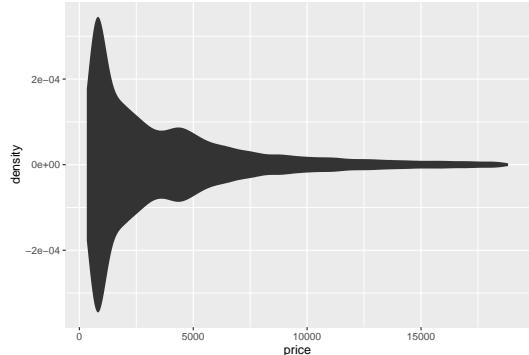
```
## [1] setosa      setosa      setosa      se
## [7] setosa      setosa      setosa      se
## [13] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [19] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [25] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [31] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [37] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [43] setosa     setosa      setosa      se
## [49] setosa     setosa      setosa      versicolor ve
## [55] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [61] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [67] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [73] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [79] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [85] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [91] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [97] versicolor versicolor versicolor ve
## [103] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [109] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [115] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [121] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [127] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [133] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [139] virginica virginica virginica vi
## [145] virginica virginica virginica vi
## Levels: setosa versicolor virginica
```

## 30.2 statistic

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(diamonds, aes(x = price)) +
  stat_density(aes(ymax = ..density..,
    ymin = -..density..),
  geom = "ribbon", position =
    "identity"
)
```

## Warning: The dot-dot notation (`..density..`)  
 ## i Please use `after\_stat(density)` instead.  
 ## This warning is displayed once every 8 hours.  
 ## Call `lifecycle::last\_lifecycle\_warnings()`  
 ## generated.



smoothed density estimates [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_density.html](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_density.html)

Computes and draws kernel density estimate, which is a smoothed version of the histogram. This is a useful alternative to the histogram for continuous data that comes from an underlying smooth distribution.

`geom_density`

`stat_density`

[https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_density.html#ref-examples](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_density.html#ref-examples)

### 30.3 scale

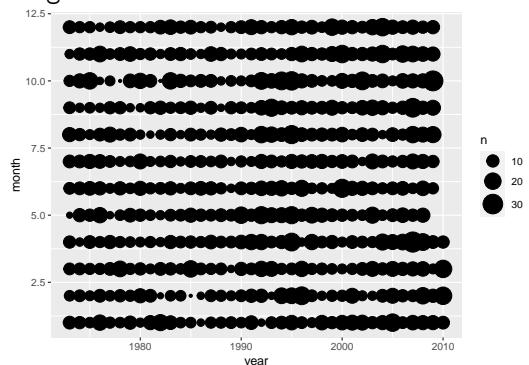
`ggplot2`

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#section-15>

```
library(ggplot2)

data(quake6, package = "MSG")
ggplot(quake6, aes(x = year, y =
  month)) +
  stat_sum(aes(size = ..n..)) +
  scale_size(range = c(1, 8))
```

## Warning: package 'ggplot2' was built under R 4.0.0  
 ## Warning: The dot-dot notation (`..n..`) was deprecated  
 ## i Please use `after\_stat(n)` instead.  
 ## This warning is displayed once every 8 hours.  
 ## Call `lifecycle::last\_lifecycle\_warnings()`  
 ## generated.



count overlapping points [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_count.html?q=stat\\_sum#ref-usage](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_count.html?q=stat_sum#ref-usage)

This is a variant `geom_point()` that counts the number of observations at each location, then maps the count to point area. It useful when you have discrete data and overplotting.

`geom_count`

`stat_sum`

[https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom\\_count.html?q=stat\\_sum#ref-examples](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/geom_count.html?q=stat_sum#ref-examples)

scales for area or radius [https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale\\_size.html?q=scale\\_size#null](https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/scale_size.html?q=scale_size#null)

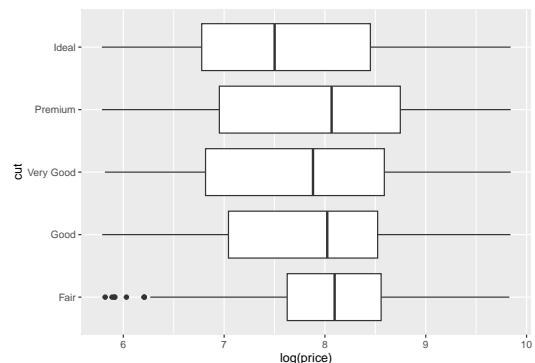
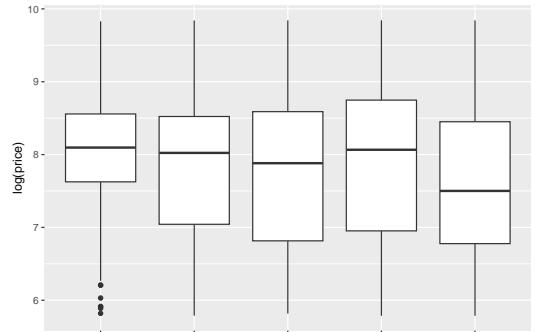
`scale_size`

## 30.4 coordinate system

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#section-16>

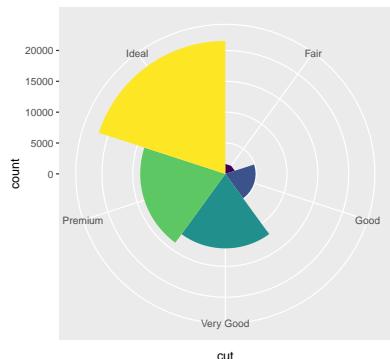
```
library(ggplot2)

p <- ggplot(aes(x = cut, y =
  log(price)), data = diamonds) +
  geom_boxplot()
p
p + coord_flip()
```



```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = cut, fill = cut), data
  = diamonds) +
  coord_polar() +
  geom_bar(width = 1, show.legend =
    FALSE)
```

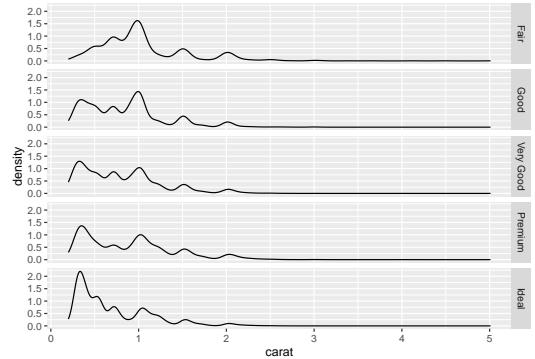


## 30.5 facet

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#subsec:facet>

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = carat), data =
  diamonds) +
  geom_density() +
  facet_grid(cut ~ .)
```

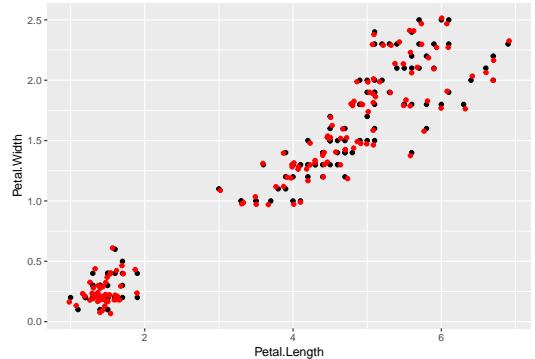


## 30.6 jitter

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#section-17>

```
library(ggplot2)

ggplot(aes(x = Petal.Length, y =
  Petal.Width), data = iris) +
  geom_point() +
  geom_jitter(color = "red")
```



## 30.7 font

<https://bookdown.org/xiangyun/msg/system.html#subsec:font>



# Chapter 31

## notational system for design

<sup>7</sup> p.51

NSD = notational system for design

<sup>5</sup>

### 31.1 graphic notation

<sup>7</sup> p.51

- $X$ : treatment or exposure to an agent or an event of interest
- $P$ : **placebo**, i.e. blank treatment or exposure, or standard treatment, or exposure as an active control
- $O$ : **observation** or process of measurement
- $R$ : **randomization**, i.e. random assignment of research subjects to separate treatment or exposure groups
- subscript
  - $g$ : **groups**
  - $k$ : **kinds** of treatments, exposures, or placebos
  - $t$ : **time** or sequential order

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/591882/citation-within-a-latex-figure-caption-in-markdown>

```
(ref:rudolph) *nice* cite: [@Lam94].  
(ref:campbell1963) *nice* cite: [@campbell1963].  
(ref:campbell1963) ([@campbell1963]  
(ref:campbell1963) \ [@campbell1963]
```

<sup>5</sup> 5

### 31.2 pre-experimental design

<sup>5</sup> p.6

	Sources of Invalidity								External			
	Internal	External							Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
	History	Maturation	Testing	Instrumentation	Regression	Selection	Mortality	Interaction of Selection and Maturation, etc.	Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
<i>Pre-Experimental Designs:</i>												
1. One-Shot Case Study	-	-				-	-			-		
	X	O										
2. One-Group Pretest-Posttest Design	-	-	-	-	?	+	+	-	-	-	-	?
	O	X	O									
3. Static-Group Comparison	+	?	+	+	+	-	-	-		-		
	X	O										
<i>True Experimental Designs:</i>												
4. Pretest-Posttest Control Group Design	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	?	?	?
	R	O	X	O								
	R	O										
5. Solomon Four-Group Design	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	?	?	?
	R	O	X	O								
	R	O										
6. Posttest-Only Control Group Design	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	?	?	?
	R	X	O									
	R	O										

Figure 31.1: pre- and true experimental designs ( 5 p.8)

### 31.2.1 one-shot case study

$X \quad O$

### 31.2.2 one-group pretest-posttest design

$O \quad X \quad O$

paired  $t$  test

<sup>7</sup> p.62

$O \quad X \quad O$   
 $O_t \quad X \quad O_t$   
 $O_0 \quad X \quad O_1$

---

$O \quad X \quad O$   
 $O_{gt} \quad X_g \quad O_{gt}$   
 $O_{10} \quad X \quad O_{11}$

### 31.2.3 static-group comparison

$X \quad O$   
 $X_g \quad O_{gt}$   
 $X \quad O_{11}$   
 $O_{21}$

---

	Sources of Invalidity											
	Internal							External				
	History	Maturity	Testing	Instrumentation	Regression	Selection	Mortality	Interaction of Selection and Maturation, etc.	Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
<i>Quasi-Experimental Designs:</i>												
7. Time Series <i>O O O O X O O O</i>	-	+	+	?	+	+	+	+	-	?	?	
8. Equivalent Time Samples Design <i>X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>2</sub>O X<sub>3</sub>O, etc.</i>	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	?	-	-
9. Equivalent Materials Samples Design <i>M<sub>a</sub>X<sub>1</sub>O M<sub>b</sub>X<sub>2</sub>O M<sub>c</sub>X<sub>3</sub>O, etc.</i>	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	?	?	-
10. Nonequivalent Control Group Design <i>O X O</i> <i>O-----O</i>	+	+	+	+	?	+	+	-	-	?	?	
11. Counterbalanced Designs <i>X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>2</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>2</sub>O</i> <i>X<sub>2</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>2</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O</i> <i>X<sub>3</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>3</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O</i> <i>X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>3</sub>O X<sub>1</sub>O X<sub>3</sub>O</i>	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	?	?	?	-	
12. Separate-Sample Pretest-Posttest Design <i>R O (X)</i> <i>R X O</i>	-	-	+	?	+	+	-	-	+	+	+	
12a. <i>R O (X)</i> <i>R X O</i> <i>R O (X)</i> <i>R X O</i>	+	-	+	?	+	+	-	+	+	+	+	
12b. <i>R O<sub>1</sub> (X)</i> <i>R O<sub>2</sub> (X)</i> <i>R X O<sub>1</sub></i> <i>R X O<sub>2</sub></i>	-	+	+	?	+	+	-	?	+	+	+	
12c. <i>R O<sub>1</sub> X O<sub>2</sub></i> <i>R X O<sub>2</sub></i>	-	-	+	?	+	+	+	-	+	+	+	

Figure 31.2: quasi-experimental designs ( <sup>5</sup> p.40)

	Sources of Invalidity								External			
	Internal	External							Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
	History	Maturation	Testing	Instrumentation	Regression	Selection	Mortality	Interaction of Selection and Maturation, etc.	Interaction of Testing and X	Interaction of Selection and X	Reactive Arrangements	Multiple-X Interference
<i>Quasi-Experimental Designs</i>												
<i>Continued:</i>												
13. Separate-Sample Pretest-Posttest Control Group Design	R	O	(X)	R	X	O	R	O	R	O	R	O
	R	O	(X)	R	X	O	R	O	R	O	R	O
13a. { R O (X) R X O R' O (X) R X O R O (X) R X O R O O R' O R O R O O R O O R O O R O O R O O }	+ + + + + + + -								+ + +			
14. Multiple Time-Series	O O O X O O O O	O O O O O O O O	+ + + + + + + +						- - ?			
15. Institutional Cycle Design	A X O <sub>1</sub>	B <sub>1</sub> R O <sub>2</sub> X O <sub>3</sub>	B <sub>2</sub> R X O <sub>4</sub>	C O <sub>5</sub> X	O <sub>2</sub> < O <sub>1</sub>	O <sub>5</sub> < O <sub>4</sub>	+ - + + ? - ?	+ - ? +				
					O <sub>2</sub> < O <sub>4</sub>	O <sub>5</sub> < O <sub>4</sub>	- - - ? ? + +	- - ? +				
					O <sub>2</sub> = O <sub>4</sub>	O <sub>5</sub> = O <sub>4</sub>	- + ? ? + ?	- + ? +				
					O <sub>5</sub> = O <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>5</sub> = O <sub>2</sub>	+	-				
16. Regression Discontinuity	+ + + ? + + ? +								+ - + +			

• General Population Controls for Class B, etc.

Figure 31.3: quasi-experimental designs continued ( <sup>5</sup> p.56)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & O \\ X_g & O_{gt} \\ X & O_{11} \\ & O_{01} \end{array}$$

### 31.3 true experimental design

<sup>5</sup> p.13

#### 31.3.1 posttest-only control group design

basic experimental design

two-sample  $t$  test

<sup>7</sup> p.53

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X & O \\ R & & O \end{array}$$

or, with a placebo or an active control,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X & O \\ R & P & O \end{array}$$


---

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X_g & O_{gt} \end{array}$$


---

$$\begin{array}{lll} R & X_g = X_1 = X & O_{gt} = O_{11} \\ R & X_g = X_2 = \emptyset & O_{gt} = O_{21} \end{array}$$

or, with a placebo or an active control

$$\begin{array}{lll} R & X_g = X_1 = X & O_{gt} = O_{11} \\ R & X_g = X_2 = P & O_{gt} = O_{21} \end{array}$$


---

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X & O_{11} \\ R & & O_{21} \end{array}$$

or, with a placebo or an active control

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X & O_{11} \\ R & P & O_{21} \end{array}$$


---

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X_g & O_{gt} \\ R & X & O_{11} \\ R & P & O_{21} \end{array}$$


---

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & X & O \\ R & X_g & O_{gt} \\ R & X & O_{11} \\ R & P & O_{21} \end{array}$$

### 31.3.2 pretest-posttest control group design

$R$	$O$	$X$	$O$
$R$	$O_{gt}$	$X_g$	$O_{gt}$
$R$	$O_{10}$	$X$	$O_{11}$
$R$	$O_{20}$		$O_{21}$

### 31.3.3 Solomon four-group design

<sup>7</sup> p.52

Solomon 4-group design = pretest-posttest + posttest-only control group design

$R$	$O_{gt}$	$X_g$	$O_{gt}$
$R$	$O_{10}$	$X$	$O_{11}$
$R$	$O_{20}$		$O_{21}$
$R$		$X$	$O_{31}$
$R$			$O_{41}$

---

$R$	$O$	$X$	$O$
$R$	$O_{gt}$	$X_g$	$O_{gt}$
$R$	$O_{10}$	$X$	$O_{11}$
$R$	$O_{20}$		$O_{21}$
$R$		$X$	$O_{31}$
$R$			$O_{41}$

## 31.4 quasi-experimental design

<sup>5</sup> p.34

## 31.5 correlational and ex post facto designs

<sup>5</sup> p.64

## 31.6 graphic notation, advanced

<sup>7</sup> p.74

- $X$ : treatment or exposure to an agent or an event of interest
- $P$ : **placebo**, i.e. blank treatment or exposure, or standard treatment, or exposure as an active control
- $O$ : **observation** or process of measurement
- $R$ : **randomization**, i.e. random assignment of research subjects to separate treatment or exposure groups
- subscript
  - $_g$ : **groups**
  - $_k$ : **kinds** of treatments, exposures, or placebos
  - $_t$ : **time** or sequential order
- $V$ : **variable(s)**
  - $B(V)$ : **blocking** by the variable(s)
  - $M(V)$ : **matching** by the variable(s)

- $S(V)$ : **stratifying** by the variable(s)
- $L(V/L)$ : **limiting** to the level(s) of the variable(s)
- $M^*$ : research **material(s)** selected
- –: cohort



# Chapter 32

## design of experiment

experimental design = experiment design = design of experiments = DoE

<sup>7</sup> p.72

question-design-analysis loop

### 32.1 notational system for design<sup>[31]</sup>

graphic notation, advanced<sup>[31.6]</sup>

### 32.2 terminology

- population
  - sample
    - \* subsample
- unit
  - experimental unit
    - \* response
    - \* block: group of similar experimental unit (<sup>8</sup> p.74)
  - observational unit / measurement unit <sup>1</sup>
- replication (<sup>7</sup> p.76): an independent observation of the treatment (<sup>8</sup> p.74)
  - treatment replication: experimental-unit-to-experimental-unit variation
  - measurement replication = subsample: measurement-to-measurement variation
- replicate
  - experimental replicate
  - biological replicate
  - technical replicate

---

<sup>8</sup> p.73

$Y_{ij}$ : the response observed from the  $j^{\text{th}}$  experimental unit assigned to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  treatment

$\mu_i$ : the mean response to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  treatment

$\varepsilon_{ij}$ : the noise from other possible natural variation or nonrandom and random error

---

<sup>1</sup><https://passel2.unl.edu/view/lesson/2e09f0055f13/6>

$$Y_{ij} = \mu_i + \varepsilon_{ij}, \begin{cases} i \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, n_i] & \mathbb{N} \ni n_i \text{ treatments} \\ j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, n_j] & \mathbb{N} \ni n_j \text{ experimental units per treatment} \end{cases}$$

Each treatment has  $n_j$  experimental units, so there are totally  $n_i n_j$  experimental units.

If experimental units cannot be homogeneous, we can try to

- stratify them
- group them, and measure group to group variation
- block them

here  $n_j$  blocks each with  $n_i$  experimental units where **each treatment occurs once in each block**

$$\begin{aligned} Y_{ij} &= \mu_i + \varepsilon_{ij} \\ &= \mu_i + b_j + \varepsilon_{ij}^*, \begin{cases} i \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, n_i] & \mathbb{N} \ni n_i \text{ experimental units per block} \\ j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, n_j] & \mathbb{N} \ni n_j \text{ blocks} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\varepsilon_{ij} = b_j + \varepsilon_{ij}^*$$

i.e. the variation between groups or blocks of experimental units has been identified and isolated from  $\varepsilon_{ij}^*$ , which represents the variability of experimental units within a block. By isolating the block effect from the experimental units, the within-block variation can be used to compare treatment effects, which involves computing the estimated standard errors of contrasts of the treatments.

$$\begin{aligned} Y_{ij} - Y_{i'j} &= (\mu_i + b_j + \varepsilon_{ij}^*) \\ &\quad - (\mu_{i'} + b_j + \varepsilon_{i'j}^*) \\ &= (\mu_i - \mu_{i'}) + (\varepsilon_{ij}^* - \varepsilon_{i'j}^*) \end{aligned}$$

which does not depend on the block effect  $b_j$  or free of block effects. The result of this difference is that the variance of the difference of two treatment responses within a block depends on the within-block variation among the experimental units and not the between-block variation.

### 32.2.1 replication vs. subsample

It is very important to distinguish between a **subsample** and a **replication** since the error variance estimated from between subsamples is in general considerably smaller than the error variance estimated from replications or between experimental units. (<sup>8</sup> p.77)

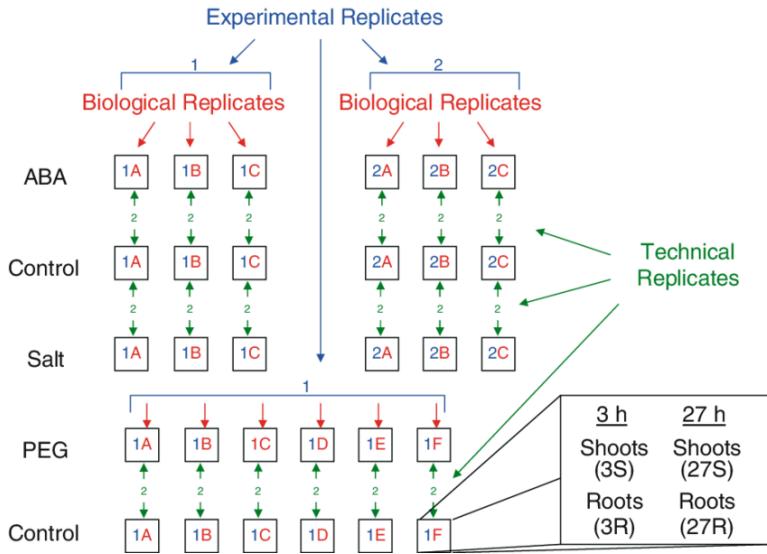
<https://www.researchgate.net/post/What-is-Experimental-Unit-Replicate-Total-sample-size-treatment-size>

### 32.2.2 replication vs. repeated measurements

#### 32.2.3 replication, replicate

##### 32.2.3.1 technical replicate, biological replicate

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c\\_cpl5YsBV8](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c_cpl5YsBV8)

Figure 32.1: experimental, biological, technical replicates ( <sup>9</sup> )

### 32.2.4 Latin square design

LSD = Latin square design

<sup>10</sup> p.505~507

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/501671/how-to-get-math-mode-curly-braces-in-tikz>

```
\usepackage{pgfplots} in engine.opts=list(extra.preamble=c("\usepackage{pgfplots}"))
\usetikzlibrary{decorations}
```

$p = 4$ columns			
$p = 4$ rows			
$p =  \{A, B, C, D\}  = 4$ treatments			
A	B	C	D
B	C	D	A
C	D	A	B
D	A	B	C

Figure 32.2: Latin square example

$$Y_{ijk} = \mu + \alpha_i + \beta_j + \gamma_k + \varepsilon_{ijk}, \begin{cases} i \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ treatments} \\ j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ rows} \\ k \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ columns} \end{cases}$$

$$\mathcal{E}_{ijk} \stackrel{\text{i.i.d.}}{\sim} n(0, \sigma^2)$$

$\rho_i$ :  $i^{\text{th}}$  row

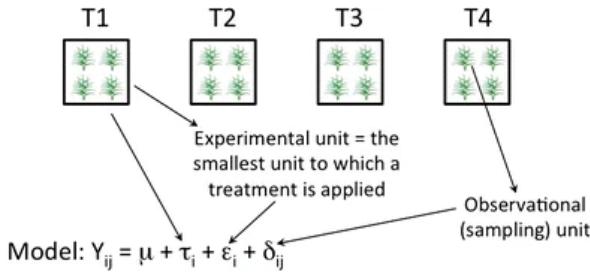
$\kappa_j$ :  $j^{\text{th}}$  column

$\tau_k$ :  $k^{\text{th}}$  treatment

$$Y_{ijk} = \mu + \alpha_i + \beta_j + \gamma_k + \mathcal{E}_{ijk}, \begin{cases} i \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ treatments} \\ j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ rows} \\ k \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ columns} \end{cases}$$

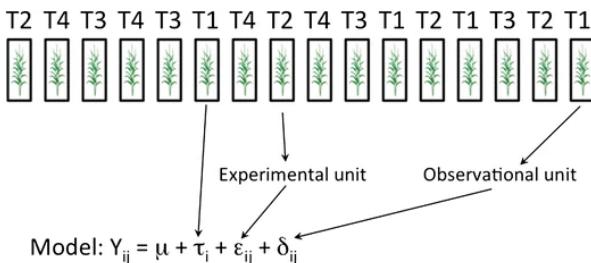
$$= \mu + \rho_i + \kappa_j + \tau_k + \mathcal{E}_{ijk}, \begin{cases} i \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ rows} \\ j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ columns} \\ k \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, p] & \mathbb{N} \ni p \text{ treatments} \end{cases}$$

### 32.2.5 model assumption and experimental unit, measurement/observational unit



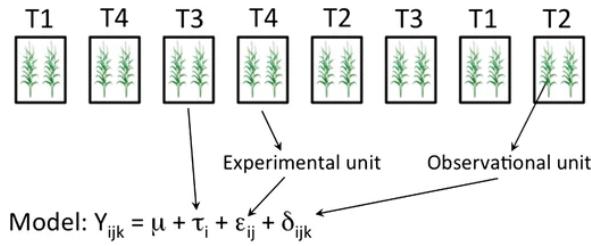
ANOVA Source of variation	df
Treatments + Experimental error	3 (fixed)
Observational error	12

Figure 32.3: model assumption and experimental unit 1 ( [11 fig.1](#) )



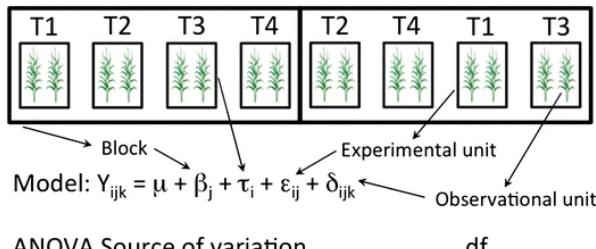
ANOVA Source of variation	df
Treatments	3 (fixed)
Error (experimental + observational)	12

Figure 32.4: model assumption and experimental unit 2 ( [11 fig.2](#) )



ANOVA Source of variation	df
Treatments	3 (fixed)
Experimental error	4
Observational error	8

Figure 32.5: model assumption and experimental unit 3 ( [11](#) fig.3)



ANOVA Source of variation	df
Blocks	1
Treatments	3 (fixed)
Experimental error	3
Observational error	8

Figure 32.6: model assumption and experimental unit 4 ( [11](#) fig.4)

$$Y_{ijk} = \mu + \tau_i + \beta_j + \epsilon_{ij} + \Delta_{ijk}$$

## 32.3 experiment structure

### 32.3.1 treatment structure

<sup>8</sup> p.77

- 1-way treatment structure
- 2-way treatment structure
- factorial arrangement treatment structure
- *fractional* factorial arrangement treatment structure
- factorial arrangement with one or more controls

### 32.3.2 design structure

<sup>8</sup> p.77

- CRD = completely randomized design
- RCBD = randomized complete block design
  - ? why not called CRBD = completely randomized block design
- LSD = Latin square design<sup>[32.2.4]</sup>
- IBD = incomplete block design
  - BIBD = balanced IBD
- various combinations and generalizations

### 32.3.3 size of experimental unit

- split-plot design
  - split-split-plot design
  - split-split-split-plot design
- repeated measures design
  - cross-over design
  - change-over design
- nested design = hierarchical design
- variations and combinations
  - SSEU = several sizes of experimental units

## 32.4 approach to experimentation

<sup>7</sup> p.75

- approach to experimentation
  - best-guess approach
  - one-factor-at-a-time approach = OFAT
  - factorial approach

## 32.5 sample size estimation

## 32.6 statistical analysis plan

## 32.7 protocol

<sup>7</sup> p.95

- study objective
- study endpoint
  - primary endpoint
  - secondary endpoint(s)
- experimental unit(s)
- treatment structure<sup>[32.3.1]</sup>
- design structure<sup>[32.3.2]</sup>
- potential confounder(s)
- randomization
- blinding
- chance reduction
- sample size estimation<sup>[32.5]</sup>
- data collection
- data management system
- statistical analysis plan<sup>[32.6]</sup>
- DSMB / DSMC = data and safety monitoring board / committee

## 32.8 DoE course with six sigma and Minitab

<https://zhuanlan.zhihu.com/p/265914617>

<https://www.zhihu.com/question/416312693/answer/1426399810>

### 32.8.1 evolution

- Fisher
- Rao



# Chapter 33

## quine

```
s = 's = %r\nprint(s%%s)'  
print(s%s)
```

```
## s = 's = %r\nprint(s%%s)'  
## print(s%s)
```

This snippet is a clever example of a quine. A quine is a computer program that takes no input and produces a copy of its own source code as its output. The given code in Python is written to print its own source when executed. Let's break it down:

`s = 's = %r\nprint(s%%s)':` This line defines a string `s` that contains a format string. `%r` is a placeholder that gets replaced with the `repr()` of the argument provided to the `%` operator, which in this case will be the string `s` itself. This means it will insert the string representation of `s` into the format string at `%r`.

`print(s%s):` This line prints the result of `s%s`. Here, the `%` operator is used to format the string `s` with itself. The `%s` inside the print statement is replaced by the string `s`, leading to the entire string being printed out, including the print statement itself.

This is because the format operation replaces `%r` with the representation of the string `s`, and `%%` is a way to escape the `%` sign in format strings, resulting in a single `%` in the output. This output is exactly the same as the source code, making it a quine.

### 33.1 `%r`

The `%r` in Python string formatting represents the “representation” of a value, which is typically the way you would see it if you were to type it into a Python interpreter. It uses the `repr()` function to convert the value to a string. This is useful for debugging, among other things, because it shows strings with quotes around them and escapes special characters. Essentially, `%r` gives you the “developer’s view” of what a variable looks like.

Here's a simple example to illustrate `%r` versus `%s` in string formatting:

```
my_str = "Hello, World!\nNew line character is represented with \\n"  
print("Using %%s: %s" % my_str)
```

```
## Using %s: Hello, World!  
## New line character is represented with \n
```

```
print("Using %%r: %r" % my_str)

## Using %r: 'Hello, World!\nNew line character is represented with \\n'
```

In this example:

The `%s` specifier tells Python to convert the object using `str()`, which is designed to be readable and outputs the string "Hello, World!\nNew line character is represented with \n", interpreting the escape character `\n` as a newline.

The `%r` specifier tells Python to convert the object using `repr()`, which aims to generate output that could be used to recreate the object, outputting the string 'Hello, World!\nNew line character is represented with \\n', preserving the actual escape characters in the output.

Notice how `%r` preserves the string exactly as it is, including the quotes and escaped characters, making it clear it's a string and showing the escape sequence explicitly.

# Chapter 34

## quaternion

### 34.1 TaylorCatAlice

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blackboard\\_bold](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blackboard_bold)

#### 34.1.1 complex / dionion / bionion

$$\begin{aligned} c &= a + bi = a + ib, \begin{cases} c \in \mathbb{C} \\ i^2 = -1 \\ a, b \in \mathbb{R} \Leftrightarrow \langle a, b \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^2 \end{cases} \\ &= z = x + yi = x + iy, \begin{cases} z \in \mathbb{C} \\ i^2 = -1 \\ x, y \in \mathbb{R} \Leftrightarrow \langle x, y \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^2 \end{cases} \\ &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} + \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} i \right) = r (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) = re^{i\theta} \end{aligned}$$

Also see complex group representation<sup>[37.3]</sup>.

#### 34.1.2 trionion / triernion / triplex / ternion

<https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-tw/%E4%B8%89%E5%85%83%E6%95%B8>

<https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/1784166/why-are-there-no-triernions-3-dimensional-analogue-of-complex-numbers-quot>

<https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/32100/is-there-a-third-dimension-of-numbers/4453131>

$$\begin{aligned}
t &= a + bi + cj = a + ib + jc, \quad \begin{cases} t \in \mathbb{T} \\ i^2 = -1 \\ j^2 = -1 \end{cases} \\
w &= w = x + yi + zj = x + iy + jz, \quad \begin{cases} w \in \mathbb{T} \\ i^2 = -1 \\ j^2 = -1 \end{cases} \\
&= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} \left( \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}} + \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}i + \frac{z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}j \right) = ?
\end{aligned}$$


---

$$\begin{cases} A(BC) = (AB)C & (a) \text{ associativity} \\ A(B+C) = AB + AC & (d) \text{ distributivity} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{T} \ni ij &= X + Yi + Zj \in \mathbb{T} \\
-ij &= (i^2)j \stackrel{(a)}{=} i(ij) = i(X + Yi + Zj) \stackrel{(d)}{=} -Y + Xi + Zij \\
ij &= \frac{Y}{Z} - \frac{X}{Z}i - \frac{1}{Z}j \Rightarrow \begin{cases} X = \frac{Y}{Z} \\ Y = -\frac{X}{Z} \\ Z = -\frac{1}{Z} \end{cases} \Rightarrow Z^2 = -1 \Rightarrow Z \notin \mathbb{R} \\
-ij &= i(j^2) \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ij)j = (X + Yi + Zj)j \stackrel{(d)}{=} -Z + Xj + Yij \\
ij &= \frac{Z}{Y} - \frac{1}{Y}i - \frac{X}{Y}j \Rightarrow \begin{cases} X = \frac{Z}{Y} \\ Y = -\frac{1}{X} \\ Z = -\frac{X}{Y} \end{cases} \Rightarrow Y^2 = -1 \Rightarrow Y \notin \mathbb{R}
\end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.3 quaternion

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quaternion>

$$\begin{aligned}
q &= a + bi + cj + dk = a + ib + jc + kd, \quad \begin{cases} q \in \mathbb{H} \\ a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R} \Leftrightarrow \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \end{cases} \\
w &= w = t + xi + yj + zk = t + ix + jy + kz, \quad \begin{cases} w \in \mathbb{H} \\ t, x, y, z \in \mathbb{R} \Leftrightarrow \langle t, x, y, z \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \end{cases} \\
&= ?
\end{aligned}$$


---

The quaternion set is denoted  $\mathbb{H}$  for Sir R.W. **Hamilton**, because he suddenly and strikingly realized

$$\begin{cases} ij = k \\ k \in \mathbb{H} \end{cases} \Rightarrow ij \in \mathbb{H} \text{ for closure property}$$


---

for the sake of rigorosity, see group theory<sup>[37]</sup>

$$k^2 = -1$$

$$ij = k$$

$$\begin{aligned} ijk &= i(jk) \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ij)k = kk = k^2 = -1 \\ kij &= (ki)j \stackrel{(a)}{=} k(ij) = kk = k^2 = -1 \end{aligned}$$

$$ij = k$$

$$\begin{aligned} -j &= (i^2)j \stackrel{(a)}{=} i(ij) = ik \\ -i &= i(j^2) \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ij)j = kj \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} -j &= (i^2)j \stackrel{(a)}{=} i(ij) = ik \\ 1 &= -j^2 = j(-j) = j(ik) \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ji)k \\ k &= [1]k = [(ji)k]k \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ji)(k^2) = (ji)(-1) \\ -k &= ji \\ -i &= i(j^2) \stackrel{(a)}{=} (ij)j = kj \\ 1 &= (-i)i = (kj)i \stackrel{(a)}{=} k(ji) = kji \\ 1 &= kji \end{aligned}$$

There is no more commutativity<sup>[34.1.3.2.1]</sup>, i.e.

$$AB \not\equiv BA$$

but

$$AB + BA = 0 \Leftrightarrow AB = -BA$$

satisfying anticommutativity<sup>[34.1.3.2.2]</sup>.

$$\begin{cases} ij = k \\ ji = -k \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{aligned} ji &= -k = -ij \\ \Rightarrow ji &= -ij \\ \Leftrightarrow ij + ji &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{cases} kij = -1 \\ kji = 1 \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{aligned} kij &= -1 = -kji \\ \Rightarrow kij &= -kji \\ \Leftrightarrow kij + kji &= 0 \end{aligned}$$


---

$$\begin{aligned}
q &= a + bi + cj + dk = a + ib + jc + kd, \begin{cases} q \in \mathbb{H} \\ i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1 = ijk \Rightarrow ij = k \\ a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \\
&= w = t + xi + yj + zk = t + ix + jy + kz, \begin{cases} w \in \mathbb{H} \\ i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1 = ijk \Rightarrow ij = k \\ t, x, y, z \in \mathbb{R} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \langle t, x, y, z \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \\
&= t + (i \quad j \quad k) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = x_0 + (i \quad j \quad k) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = x_0 + (e_1 \quad e_2 \quad e_3) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = x_0 + \mathbf{x}, \begin{cases} e_1 = i = i \\ e_2 = j = j \\ e_3 = k = k \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.3.1 true origin of ( dot product & cross product ) / ( inner product & outer product )

product of two pure imaginary quaternions

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{x}_1 \mathbf{x}_2 &= (x_{11}i + x_{12}j + x_{13}k)(x_{21}i + x_{22}j + x_{23}k) \\
&= x_{11}x_{21}i^2 + x_{11}x_{22}ij + x_{11}x_{23}ik \\
&\quad + x_{12}x_{21}ji + x_{12}x_{22}j^2 + x_{12}x_{23}jk \\
&\quad + x_{13}x_{21}ki + x_{13}x_{22}kj + x_{13}x_{23}k^2 \\
&= -(x_{11}x_{21} + x_{12}x_{22} + x_{13}x_{23}) \\
&\quad + (x_{12}x_{23} - x_{13}x_{22})jk + (x_{13}x_{21} - x_{11}x_{23})ki + (x_{11}x_{22} - x_{12}x_{21})ij \\
&= -(x_{11}x_{21} + x_{12}x_{22} + x_{13}x_{23}) \\
&\quad + (x_{12}x_{23} - x_{13}x_{22})i + (x_{13}x_{21} - x_{11}x_{23})j + (x_{11}x_{22} - x_{12}x_{21})k \\
&= -(\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2) + (\mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2), \begin{cases} \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 = x_{11}x_{21} + x_{12}x_{22} + x_{13}x_{23} \\ \mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{vmatrix} i & j & k \\ x_{11} & x_{12} & x_{13} \\ x_{21} & x_{22} & x_{23} \end{vmatrix} \end{cases} \\
&= -\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 + \mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2
\end{aligned}$$

product of two general quaternions / ordinary quaternions

$$\begin{aligned}
q_1 q_2 &= (q_{10} + q_{11}\mathbf{i} + q_{12}\mathbf{j} + q_{13}\mathbf{k}) (q_{20} + q_{21}\mathbf{i} + q_{22}\mathbf{j} + q_{23}\mathbf{k}) \\
&= (x_{10} + \mathbf{x}_1) (x_{20} + \mathbf{x}_2), \begin{cases} x_{i\mu} = q_{i\mu} & \mu \in \{0\} \cup (\mathbb{N} \cap [1, 3]) \\ \mathbf{x}_i = x_{ij} \mathbf{e}_j & i, j \in \mathbb{N} \cap [1, 3], \begin{cases} \mathbf{e}_1 = \mathbf{i} \\ \mathbf{e}_2 = \mathbf{j} \\ \mathbf{e}_3 = \mathbf{k} \end{cases} \end{cases} \\
&= x_{10}x_{20} + x_{10}\mathbf{x}_2 + x_{20}\mathbf{x}_1 + \mathbf{x}_1\mathbf{x}_2 \\
&= x_{10}x_{20} + x_{10}\mathbf{x}_2 + x_{20}\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 + \mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2 \\
&= (x_{10}x_{20} - \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2) + (x_{10}\mathbf{x}_2 + x_{20}\mathbf{x}_1 + \mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2) \\
x_{10}x_{20} - \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 &= \begin{pmatrix} q_{10} & q_{11} & q_{12} & q_{13} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & -1 & & \\ & & -1 & \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_{20} \\ q_{21} \\ q_{22} \\ q_{23} \end{pmatrix} = q_1^\mu \eta_{\mu\nu} q_2^\nu \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} q_{10} & q_{11} & q_{12} & q_{13} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_{20} \\ q_{21} \\ q_{22} \\ q_{23} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{q}_1^\top H \mathbf{q}_2, H = [\eta_{\mu\nu}]_{4 \times 4} = \eta_{\mu\nu} \\
q_1 q_2 &= (x_{10}x_{20} - \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2) + (x_{10}\mathbf{x}_2 + x_{20}\mathbf{x}_1 + \mathbf{x}_1 \times \mathbf{x}_2) \\
QP &= (Q_0 P_0 - \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{P}) + (Q_0 \mathbf{P} + P_0 \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{Q} \times \mathbf{P})
\end{aligned}$$

$$ab = (a_0 b_0 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) + (a_0 \mathbf{b} + b_0 \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$$

Minkowski metric tensor

$$\eta = H = [\eta_{\mu\nu}]_{4 \times 4} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & -1 & & \\ & & -1 & \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$$

and quaternions as 4-vectors or four-vectors

$$\mathbf{q}_1^\top = (q_{10} \quad q_{11} \quad q_{12} \quad q_{13})$$

$$\mathbf{q}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} q_{20} \\ q_{21} \\ q_{22} \\ q_{23} \end{pmatrix}$$

### 34.1.3.2 commutativity vs. anticommutativity

#### 34.1.3.2.1 commutativity 交換律 = 交換性 = 對易性

$$AB = BA \Leftrightarrow AB - BA = 0$$

$$AB = BA \Rightarrow AB \equiv BA$$

### 34.1.3.2.2 anticommutativity 反交換律 = 反交換性 = 反對易性

$$AB + BA = 0 \Leftrightarrow AB = -BA$$

$$AB = -BA \Rightarrow AB \neq BA$$

### 34.1.3.3 bracket

#### 34.1.3.3.1 self-invented bracket 自創括號 = 自創括

##### 34.1.3.3.1.1 commutative bracket 交換括號 = 對易式

$$[X, Y] = \frac{XY - YX}{2}$$

##### 34.1.3.3.1.2 anticommutative bracket 反交換括號 = 反對易式

$$\{X, Y\} = \frac{XY + YX}{2}$$

#### 34.1.3.3.2 Poisson bracket [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poisson\\_bracket](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poisson_bracket)

#### 34.1.3.3.3 Lagrange bracket

#### 34.1.3.3.4 Lie bracket

#### 34.1.3.4 triple product

product = double product

$$ab = (a_0 b_0 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) + (a_0 \mathbf{b} + b_0 \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$$

pure imaginary

$$\begin{aligned} ab &= (a_0 b_0 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) + (a_0 \mathbf{b} + b_0 \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \\ &\quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} a_0 = 0 \\ b_0 = 0 \\ \quad = (00 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) + (0\mathbf{b} + 0\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \\ \quad = -\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} \end{array} \right. \end{aligned}$$

pure imaginary product can get both ( real & imaginary ) / ( scalar & vector ) parts

$$ab = \mathbf{a}\mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}, \left\{ \begin{array}{l} a = 0 + \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \\ b = 0 + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \end{array} \right.$$


---

triple product

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triple\\_product](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triple_product)

pure imaginary

$$\begin{cases} a = 0 + \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \\ b = 0 + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \\ c = 0 + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} abc &= \mathbf{a}\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a}\mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} = (-\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} \\ &= \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a}(-\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} abc &= (\mathbf{a}\mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} = (-\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} \\ &= -(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} \\ &= -(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} + (-(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c}) \\ &= [-(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}] + [(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}] \\ &= \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a}(-\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \\ &= -\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) + \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \\ &= -\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) + (-\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) + \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})) \\ &= [-\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})] + [\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})] \end{aligned}$$

by comparing ( real & imaginary ) / ( scalar & vector ) parts,

$$\begin{aligned} &\begin{cases} -(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \end{cases} \\ \Rightarrow &\begin{cases} (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \end{cases} \quad (s) \quad (v) \end{aligned}$$


---

permutation

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots \\ \sigma(x_1) & \sigma(x_2) & \cdots \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & a & b \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & c & b \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & a & c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & b & a \end{pmatrix}$$


---

$$(s) \Rightarrow \begin{cases} (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \end{pmatrix}, s_1 \\ (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \end{pmatrix}, s_2 \\ (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & a & b \end{pmatrix}, s_3 \\ (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & a & c \end{pmatrix}, s_4 \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & c & b \end{pmatrix}, s_5 \\ (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & b & a \end{pmatrix}, s_6 \end{cases}$$

· commutative  $\Rightarrow (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} \stackrel{s_1}{=} (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{a} \stackrel{s_2}{=} (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} \stackrel{s_3}{=} (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$   
 × anticommutative  $\stackrel{s_6}{=} -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{c} \stackrel{s_6}{=} -(\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{a} \stackrel{s_5}{=} -(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{b} \stackrel{s_4}{=} -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$   
 $\Leftrightarrow \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$   
 $= -\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) = -\mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) = -\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a})$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (v) \Rightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ b & c & a \end{pmatrix}, v_1 \\ (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \times \mathbf{a} - (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) - \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ b & c & a \end{pmatrix}, v_2 \\ (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}) \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) - \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ c & a & b \\ a & b & c \\ b & a & c \end{pmatrix}, v_3 \\ (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{c} - (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}) \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ b & a & c \end{pmatrix}, v_4 \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) \times \mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{b}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & c & b \\ a & b & c \\ a & c & b \end{pmatrix}, v_5 \\ (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{a} - (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) - \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}) & \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & b & a \end{pmatrix}, v_6 \end{array} \right. \\
 \Rightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} -Z - C = X - A & v_1 \\ -X - A = Y - B & v_2 \\ -Y - B = Z - C & v_3 \\ Z - C = -Y - B & v_4 \\ Y - B = -X - A & v_5 \\ X - A = -Z - C & v_6 \end{array} \right. , \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \cdot \text{ and scalar-vector product} & \text{commutative} \\ \times & \text{anticommutative} \end{array} \right. , \\
 & \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} X = \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \times \mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) = (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{a} \\ Y = \mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) = -(\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) \times \mathbf{b} \\ Z = \mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = -(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) = (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{c} \\ A = \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{a} = (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{a} \\ B = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} \\ C = \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}) = (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c} \end{array} \right. \\
 \Rightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} -Z - C = X - A & v_1 = v_6 \\ -X - A = Y - B & v_2 = v_5 \\ -Y - B = Z - C & v_3 = v_4 \end{array} \right. \Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} Z + X = A - C & \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} X + Y = B - A \\ Y + Z = C - B \end{cases} \\ X + Y = B - A & \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} Y + Z = C - B \\ Z + X = A - C \end{cases} \end{array} \right. \\
 \Leftrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 2(X + Y + Z) = 0 & \Rightarrow X + Y + Z = 0 \\ Y + Z = C - B & \Rightarrow X = B - C \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}) - \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \text{ "back cab"} \\ Z + X = A - C & \Rightarrow Y = C - A \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{c}(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) - \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \\ X + Y = B - A & \Rightarrow Z = A - B \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{c} \times (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) - \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}) \end{array} \right.
 \end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.3.5 differential operator

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Differential\\_operator](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Differential_operator)

**34.1.3.5.1 4-differential operator** 4-differential operator / four-differential operator = d'Alembert operator

$$\begin{aligned}
D &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + j \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + k \frac{\partial}{\partial z} = \partial_t + i \partial_x + j \partial_y + k \partial_z \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + j \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + k \frac{\partial}{\partial z} = \partial_t + i \partial_x + j \partial_y + k \partial_z \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial x_0} + e_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} + e_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} + e_3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3} = \partial_0 + e_i \partial_i = \partial_0 + \nabla
\end{aligned}$$

$$D = \partial_0 + i \partial_1 + j \partial_2 + k \partial_3 = \partial_0 + \nabla = D_0 + \mathbf{D}$$

**34.1.3.5.2 nabla** nabla = spatial differential operator = 3-differential operator / three-differential operator

$$\nabla = e_i \partial_i = \sum_{i=1}^3 e_i \partial_i = \sum_{i=1}^3 e_i \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right)^\top = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \end{pmatrix}$$

**34.1.3.5.3 Laplace operator** Laplace operator = Laplacian

$$\Delta = \nabla^2 = \nabla \cdot \nabla = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}$$

**34.1.3.5.4 d'Alembert operator**

$$\square = \square_c = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \Delta = \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \nabla^2$$

$$\square_1 = \square_{c=1} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \Delta = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \nabla^2$$

**34.1.3.6 electromagnetism**

Maxwell

**34.1.3.6.1 4-potential** electromagnetic 4-potential / four-potential

$$A = A_0 + i A_1 + j A_2 + k A_3 = A_0 + \mathbf{A}$$

4-differential operator<sup>[34.1.3.5.1]</sup>

$$D = \partial_0 + i \partial_1 + j \partial_2 + k \partial_3 = \partial_0 + \nabla = D_0 + \mathbf{D}$$

$$QP = (Q_0 P_0 - \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{P}) + (Q_0 \mathbf{P} + P_0 \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{Q} \times \mathbf{P})$$

commutative bracket<sup>[34.1.3.3.1.1]</sup>

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{A}] &= \frac{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D}}{2} \\
2[\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{A}] &= \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D} \\
&= (\partial_0 + i\partial_1 + j\partial_2 + k\partial_3)(A_0 + iA_1 + jA_2 + kA_3) \\
&\quad - (A_0 + iA_1 + jA_2 + kA_3)(\partial_0 + i\partial_1 + j\partial_2 + k\partial_3) \\
\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} &= (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}_0\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A}) \\
&= (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A}) \\
&= \mathbf{D}_0(\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{A}) - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} \\
&= \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} \\
&= \partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0 + \nabla \times \mathbf{A} \\
\mathbf{A}\mathbf{D} &= (A_0\mathbf{D}_0 - \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{D}) + (A_0\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{D}) \\
&= (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A}) \\
&= (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A}) \\
&= \mathbf{D}_0(\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{A}) - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} \\
&= \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} \\
&= \partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0 - \nabla \times \mathbf{A}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} = \partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0 + \nabla \times \mathbf{A} \\
\mathbf{A}\mathbf{D} &= \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} = \partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0 - \nabla \times \mathbf{A}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D} &= 2\mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} = 2\nabla \times \mathbf{A} \\
[\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{A}] &= \frac{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D}}{2} = \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{A} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}
\end{aligned}$$

anticommutative bracket<sup>[34.1.3.3.1.2]</sup>

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D} &= 2(\mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0) = 2(\partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0) \\
\{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{A}\} &= \frac{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}\mathbf{D}}{2} = \mathbf{D}_0\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{A}_0 = \partial_0\mathbf{A} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla\mathbf{A}_0
\end{aligned}$$

commutation and anticommutation on differential operator and any quaternion

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{Q}] &= \nabla \times \mathbf{Q} \\
\{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{Q}\} &= \partial_0\mathbf{Q} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0
\end{aligned}$$

or more evident

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{Q}] &= \nabla \times \mathbf{Q} \\
\{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{Q}\} &= \partial_0\mathbf{Q} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0 \\
&= \partial_0(Q_0 + \mathbf{Q}) - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0 \\
&= (\partial_0 Q_0 - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q}) + (\partial_0 \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0) \\
&= \left( \frac{\partial Q_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}}{\partial t} + \nabla Q_0 \right)
\end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.3.6.2 Maxwell compromise for both quaternion and 3-vector electric potential and vector potential

$$A = A_0 + iA_1 + jA_2 + kA_3 = A_0 + \mathbf{A} = U + \mathbf{A}$$

electric quaternion and electric field

$$\begin{aligned} E &= -\{\mathbf{D}, A\} \\ &= -(\partial_0 A - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \nabla A_0) \\ &= -\partial_0 A + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} - \nabla A_0 \\ &= -\partial_t (U + \mathbf{A}) + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} - \nabla U \\ &= -\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} - \nabla U - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} \\ &= E_0 + \mathbf{E}, \quad \begin{cases} E_0 = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{E} = -\nabla U - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} \end{cases} \quad \text{electric field 3-vector} \end{aligned}$$

magnetic field

$$B = [\mathbf{D}, A] = \nabla \times \mathbf{A} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ A_1 & A_2 & A_3 \end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{B}$$

Work on time? Yes.

$$qE = qE_0 + q\mathbf{E} = qE_0 + \mathbf{F}_E$$

force equivalent on time

$$qE_0$$


---

$$\begin{cases} E = -\{\mathbf{D}, A\} = E_0 + \mathbf{E} \\ B = +[\mathbf{D}, A] = B_0 + \mathbf{B} = 0 + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} \quad B_0 = 0 \end{cases}$$


---

for any quaternion commuting and anticommutating with differential operator

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathbf{D}, Q] &= \nabla \times \mathbf{Q} \\ \{\mathbf{D}, Q\} &= \partial_0 Q - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0 \\ &= \partial_0 (Q_0 + \mathbf{Q}) - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0 \\ &= (\partial_0 Q_0 - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q}) + (\partial_0 \mathbf{Q} + \nabla Q_0) \\ &= \left( \frac{\partial Q_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{Q} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}}{\partial t} + \nabla Q_0 \right) \end{aligned}$$


---

$$\begin{cases} [\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}] = \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) \\ \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}\} = (\partial_0 E_0 - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) + (\partial_0 \mathbf{E} + \nabla E_0) = \left( \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 \right) \\ [\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}] = \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) \\ \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}\} = (\partial_0 B_0 - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) + (\partial_0 \mathbf{B} + \nabla B_0) \stackrel{B_0=0}{=} -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} + \partial_0 \mathbf{B} = (-\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \right) \end{cases}$$

by comparing ( real & imaginary ) / ( scalar & vector ) parts,

Maxwell equations without source terms

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{cases} [\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}] = +\{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}\} \Leftrightarrow (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) = \left( \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 \right) \\ \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}\} = -\{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}\} \Leftrightarrow (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) = (-\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \right) \end{cases} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 = \nabla \times \mathbf{B} \Leftrightarrow \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 \text{ 動電生磁} \\ -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times \mathbf{E} \Leftrightarrow \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \text{ 動磁生電} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.3.7 Joule heat vs. Thomson heat (Kelvin heat?)

The Lord Kelvin = William Thomson

**34.1.3.7.1 thermoelectric effect** thermoelectric effect = Seebeck effect = Peltier effect = Thomson effect

### 34.1.3.8 source term

$$J = J_0 + iJ_1 + jJ_2 + kJ_3 = J_0 + \mathbf{J} = \rho + \mathbf{J}$$

Maxwell equations with source terms

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{cases} [\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}] = J + \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}\} \Leftrightarrow (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) = \left( \rho + \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} \right) + \left( \mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 \right) \\ \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{E}\} = 0 - \{\mathbf{D}, \mathbf{B}\} \Leftrightarrow (0) + (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) = (-\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) + \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \right) \end{cases} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \rho + \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \rho + \frac{\partial E_0}{\partial t} \\ \mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 = \nabla \times \mathbf{B} \Leftrightarrow \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{J} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \nabla E_0 \text{ 動電生磁} \\ -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times \mathbf{E} \Leftrightarrow \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \text{ 動磁生電} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

### 34.1.4 quaternion group

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quaternion\\_group](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quaternion_group)

group theory<sup>[37]</sup>

or please first see quaternion group representation<sup>[37.4]</sup>.

### 34.1.5 octonion

## 34.2 3Blue1Brown

### 34.2.1 Ben Eater

<https://eater.net/quaternions/video/intro>

<https://eater.net/quaternions>

### 34.2.2 3B1B

### 34.2.3 Sutrabla

<https://www.newscientist.com/article/mg20427391-600-alices-adventures-in-algebra-wonderland-solved/>

<https://threejs.org/>

## 34.3 CCJou: LA Revelation

<https://ccjou.wordpress.com/2014/04/21/四元數/>

# **Chapter 35**

## **DICOM**

### **35.1 Innolitics: DICOM Standard Browser**

<https://dicom.innolitics.com/ciods>

<https://dicom.innolitics.com/ciods/parametric-map/parametric-map-multi-frame-functional-groups/52009229/0048021a/0040072a>

### **35.2 David Clunie: Medical Image Format Site**

<https://www.dclunie.com/>



# **Chapter 36**

## **tendon pathophysiology**

Mark E. Schweitzer, MD

### **36.1 histology**



# Chapter 37

## group theory

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group\\_\(mathematics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group_(mathematics))

### 37.1 matrix group

subset of two-by-two matrices at least excluding zero matrix

$$\mathcal{M} = (\mathcal{M}, \cdot) \subset (\mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C}) - \{0\}, \cdot) = \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C}) - \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

matrix multiplication

$$\begin{aligned} & \forall \langle M_1, M_2 \rangle \in \mathcal{M}^2, \exists M_1 M_2 \in \mathcal{M} [M_1 M_2 = M_1 \cdot M_2] \\ \Leftrightarrow & \cdot : \mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}^2 \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \\ \Leftrightarrow & \cdot : \mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \\ \Leftrightarrow & \mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M} \stackrel{\cdot}{\rightarrow} \mathcal{M} \end{aligned}$$

matrix group

$$\begin{cases} \forall \langle M_1, M_2, M_3 \rangle \in \mathcal{M}^3 [M_1 (M_2 M_3) = (M_1 M_2) M_3] & \text{associativity} \\ \exists I = I_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathcal{M}, \forall M \in \mathcal{M} [IM = M] & \text{left unit element} \\ \forall M \in \mathcal{M}, \exists M^{-1} \in \mathcal{M} [M^{-1} M = I] & \text{left inverse (element)} \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow \mathcal{M} = (\mathcal{M}, \cdot)$  is a matrix group

### 37.2 group definition and basic theorem

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group\\_\(mathematics\)#Elementary\\_consequences\\_of\\_the\\_group\\_axioms](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group_(mathematics)#Elementary_consequences_of_the_group_axioms)

**Definition 37.1** (group). group definition by a set and a binary operation on the set

$$\begin{cases}
 \circ : G \times G = G^2 \rightarrow G & \text{binary operation} \\
 \forall \langle g_1, g_2, g_3 \rangle \in G^3 [g_1 \circ (g_2 \circ g_3) = (g_1 \circ g_2) \circ g_3] & \text{associativity} \\
 \exists e = \in G, \forall g \in G [e \circ g = g] & \text{left unit element} \\
 \forall g \in G, \exists g^{-1} \in G [g^{-1} \circ g = e] & \text{left inverse (element)} \\
 \Leftrightarrow G = (G, \circ) \text{ is a group}
 \end{cases}$$

**Theorem 37.1.** *group left inverses equal right inverses*

Proof:

□

### 37.3 complex group representation

#### 37.3.1 complex basis group

$$\begin{aligned}
 G &= \{1, i, -1, -i\} \\
 &= \{i^0, i^1, i^2, i^3\}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\forall \langle g_1, g_2 \rangle \in G^2, \exists g_1 g_2 \in G [g_1 g_2 = g_1 \cdot g_2] \\
 \Leftrightarrow \cdot : G \times G &= G^2 \rightarrow G
 \end{aligned}$$

<https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/627708/tikz-how-to-put-tables-within-arbitrarily-placed-nodes>

.	1	i	-1	-i
1	1	i	-1	-i
i	i	-1	-i	1
-1	-1	-i	1	i
-i	-i	1	i	-1

.	1	i	-1	-i
1	1	i	-1	-i
i	i	-1	-i	1
-1	-1	-i	1	i
-i	-i	1	i	-1

Figure 37.1: complex basis group

#### 37.3.2 $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$

$$1 \leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = I_2 = I$$

$$\begin{aligned}
c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} &= x \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + y \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}, \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \\
&= xI + yJ, J = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R}), \langle x, y \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^2
\end{aligned}$$


---

$$J^2 = -I$$


---

$$\begin{aligned}
J^2 &= -I \\
\begin{pmatrix} a^2 + bc & ab + bd \\ ca + cd & cb + d^2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\
\begin{cases} a^2 + bc = -1 & b = 0 \Rightarrow a^2 = -1 \Rightarrow \Leftrightarrow a \in \mathbb{R} \Rightarrow b \neq 0 \\ ab + bd = 0 & (b = 0) \vee (a = -d) \xrightarrow{b \neq 0} a = -d \\ ca + cd = 0 & \xrightarrow{\text{if } a=d} \begin{cases} a = d \\ a = -d \end{cases} \\ cb + d^2 = -1 & a^2 = d^2 \Rightarrow (a = d) \vee (a = -d) \end{cases} \\
&\Rightarrow a = d = 0 \Rightarrow bc = -1
\end{aligned}$$

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ \frac{-a^2 - 1}{b} & -a \end{pmatrix} = J(a, b), b \neq 0$$

$$J(a, b) = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ \frac{-a^2 - 1}{b} & -a \end{pmatrix}, b \neq 0$$


---

$$J(a = 1, b) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & b \\ -2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow J^2(a = 1, b) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = -I$$

$$xI + yJ(a = 1, b) = \begin{pmatrix} x + y & yb \\ y \cdot \frac{-2}{b} & x - y \end{pmatrix}$$


---

$$J(a = 0, b) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & b \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$


---

$$J(a = 0, b = 1) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$


---

$$\begin{aligned} J(a=0, b=-1) &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = -J(a=0, b=1) \\ \Rightarrow J^2(a=0, b=-1) &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = -I \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} J = J(a=0, b=-1) &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \Rightarrow &\begin{cases} 1 \leftrightarrow I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ i \leftrightarrow J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{cases} \\ \Rightarrow x + yi &\leftrightarrow xI + yJ \\ = x &\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + y \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x & -y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$


---

$$x + yi \leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x & -y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} = xI + yJ$$

realizing

$$\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$$

### 37.3.3 ( determinant of complex group representation ) equivalent to ( squared modulus of complex number )

$$\det(xI + yJ) = \det \begin{pmatrix} x & -y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} = \left| \begin{matrix} x & -y \\ y & x \end{matrix} \right| = x^2 + y^2 = |x + yi|^2$$

#### 37.3.3.1 Lagrange identity

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lagrange's\\_identity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lagrange's_identity)

generalization of Brahmagupta–Fibonacci identity

specialization of Binet–Cauchy identity

cf. Euler identity<sup>[37.4.1.1]</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} &\det[(aI + bJ)(cI + dJ)] \\ &= \det \left[ \begin{pmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} c & -d \\ d & c \end{pmatrix} \right] \\ &= \det \begin{pmatrix} ac - bd & -ad - bc \\ ad + bc & ac - bd \end{pmatrix} = |(ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i|^2 = (ac - bd)^2 + (ad + bc)^2 \\ &= \left[ \det \begin{pmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{pmatrix} \right] \left[ \det \begin{pmatrix} c & -d \\ d & c \end{pmatrix} \right] = |a + bi|^2 |c + di|^2 = (a^2 + b^2)(c^2 + d^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$|a + bi|^2 |c + di|^2 = (a^2 + b^2)(c^2 + d^2) = (ac - bd)^2 + (ad + bc)^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \det [(x_1 I + y_1 J)(x_2 I + y_2 J)] \\
&= \det \left[ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & -y_1 \\ y_1 & x_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_2 & -y_2 \\ y_2 & x_2 \end{pmatrix} \right] \\
&= \det \begin{pmatrix} x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2 & -x_1 y_2 - y_1 x_2 \\ x_1 y_2 + y_1 x_2 & x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2 \end{pmatrix} = |(x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2) + (x_1 y_2 + y_1 x_2) i|^2 = (x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2)^2 + (x_1 y_2 + y_1 x_2)^2 \\
&= \left[ \det \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & -y_1 \\ y_1 & x_1 \end{pmatrix} \right] \left[ \det \begin{pmatrix} x_2 & -y_2 \\ y_2 & x_2 \end{pmatrix} \right] = |x_1 + y_1 i|^2 |x_2 + y_2 i|^2 = (x_1^2 + y_1^2) (x_2^2 + y_2^2) \\
|x_1 + y_1 i|^2 |x_2 + y_2 i|^2 &= (x_1^2 + y_1^2) (x_2^2 + y_2^2) = (x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2)^2 + (x_1 y_2 + y_1 x_2)^2
\end{aligned}$$

### 37.3.4 Euler formula proved by complex group representation

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = R_\theta \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \cos n \frac{\theta}{n} & -\sin n \frac{\theta}{n} \\ \sin n \frac{\theta}{n} & \cos n \frac{\theta}{n} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\theta}{n} & -\sin \frac{\theta}{n} \\ \sin \frac{\theta}{n} & \cos \frac{\theta}{n} \end{pmatrix}^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = R_{\frac{\theta}{n}}^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} R_{\frac{\theta}{n}} &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\theta}{n} & -\sin \frac{\theta}{n} \\ \sin \frac{\theta}{n} & \cos \frac{\theta}{n} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\frac{\theta}{n} \\ \frac{\theta}{n} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{\theta}{n} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{\theta}{n} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\pi}{2} & -\sin \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \sin \frac{\pi}{2} & \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= I + \frac{\theta}{n} R_{\frac{\pi}{2}}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} R_{\frac{\theta}{n}}^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \left[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} R_{\frac{\theta}{n}}^n \right] \left[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \right] = \left[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} R_{\frac{\theta}{n}}^n \right] \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} R_{\frac{\theta}{n}} \right]^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ I + \frac{\theta}{n} R_{\frac{\pi}{2}} \right]^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ I + \frac{\theta}{n} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right]^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ I + \frac{\theta J}{n} \right]^n \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= e^{J\theta} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{cases} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = e^{J\theta} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow e^{J\theta} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{x+y \leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x & -y \\ y & x \end{pmatrix} = xI+yJ}{\Rightarrow} e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$$

□

## 37.4 quaternion group representation

[https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear\\_representation\\_theory\\_of\\_quaternion\\_group#Two-dimensional\\_irreducible\\_representation\\_over\\_a\\_splitting\\_field](https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear_representation_theory_of_quaternion_group#Two-dimensional_irreducible_representation_over_a_splitting_field)

$$\begin{aligned} q &= a + bi + cj + dk = a + ib + jc + kd, \begin{cases} q \in \mathbb{H} \\ a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \\ w &= t + xi + yj + zk = t + ix + jy + kz, \begin{cases} w \in \mathbb{H} \\ t, x, y, z \in \mathbb{R} \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \langle t, x, y, z \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^4 \\ &= a1 + bi + cj + dk = t1 + xi + yj + zk = x_0 1 + e_i x_i \end{aligned}$$

### 37.4.1 $\mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C})$

$$1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = 1_2 = 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} e &= \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -a^2 - 1 & -a \\ \hline b & \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{cases} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -a^2 - 1 & -a \\ \hline b & \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & b \\ -1 & 0 \\ \hline b & \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \beta \\ -\beta & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow e_2 = J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = j & a = 0 \\ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -a^2 - 1 & -a \\ \hline b & \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix} & a \neq 0 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha^2 + \beta^2 & 0 \\ 0 & \beta^2 + \alpha^2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix} = e^2 = -1 = - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\Downarrow$

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = -1 \Leftrightarrow \beta^2 + \alpha^2 = -1$$

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = -1 \Rightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle \notin \mathbb{R}^2 \Rightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^2 \Rightarrow \alpha^2 + \beta^2 \geq 0$$

quaternion group has no irreducible two-dimensional representation over the reals <sup>1</sup>

$$\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle \in \mathbb{C}^2 - \mathbb{R}^2$$

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = -1 = \beta^2 + \alpha^2$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \beta & \alpha \\ \alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta & \alpha \\ \alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \beta^2 + \alpha^2 & 0 \\ 0 & \alpha^2 + \beta^2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = -1$$

$$1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, e_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}, e_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

---

<sup>1</sup>[https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear\\_representation\\_theory\\_of\\_quaternion\\_group#Four-dimensional\\_irreducible\\_representation\\_over\\_a\\_non-splitting\\_field](https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear_representation_theory_of_quaternion_group#Four-dimensional_irreducible_representation_over_a_non-splitting_field)

$$1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, i = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}, j = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$ij = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix} = k$$

$$1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, e_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}, e_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, e_3 = \begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, i = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}, j = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, k = \begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$jk = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix} = i$$


---

$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = -1$	$\begin{cases} \alpha = \sqrt{-1} \\ \beta = 0 \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \alpha = \sqrt{-2} \\ \beta = 1 \end{cases}$	$\beta = \alpha^2, n \in \{1, 2, 4, 5\}$
1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
-1	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
i	$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & -\sqrt{-1} \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{-2} & 1 \\ 1 & -\sqrt{-2} \end{pmatrix}$
-i	$\begin{pmatrix} -\alpha & -\beta \\ -\beta & \alpha \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{-1} \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{-2} & -1 \\ -1 & \sqrt{-2} \end{pmatrix}$
j	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
-j	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
k	$\begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\sqrt{-1} \\ -\sqrt{-1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\sqrt{-2} \\ -\sqrt{-2} & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
-k	$\begin{pmatrix} -\beta & \alpha \\ \alpha & \beta \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{-1} \\ \sqrt{-1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{-2} \\ \sqrt{-2} & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

---

$$-1 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2$$

$$\stackrel{\beta=\alpha^2}{=} \alpha^2 + \alpha^4$$

$$\alpha^4 + \alpha^2 + 1 = 0, \alpha^4 + \alpha^2 + 1 = (\alpha^2 + \alpha + 1)(\alpha^2 - \alpha + 1)$$

$$(\alpha^2 - 1)(\alpha^4 + \alpha^2 + 1) = 0$$

$$\alpha^6 - 1 = 0$$

$$\alpha^6 - 1 = e^{2\pi k \sqrt{-1}}, k \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\alpha = e^{2\pi \frac{n}{6} \sqrt{-1}}, n \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\} - \{0, 3\}$$

$$= e^{\pi \frac{n}{3} \sqrt{-1}}, n \in \{1, 2, 4, 5\}$$


---

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = -1 \quad \begin{cases} \alpha = i \\ \beta = 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} \alpha = \sqrt{2}i \\ \beta = 1 \end{cases} \quad \omega = e^{i\pi\frac{n}{3}}, n \in \{1, 2, 4, 5\}$$

1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
-1	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
i	$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2}i & 1 \\ 1 & -\sqrt{2}i \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} \omega & \omega^2 \\ \omega^2 & -\omega \end{pmatrix}$
-i	$\begin{pmatrix} -\alpha & -\beta \\ -\beta & \alpha \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -i & 0 \\ 0 & i \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2}i & -1 \\ -1 & \sqrt{2}i \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -\omega & -\omega^2 \\ -\omega^2 & \omega \end{pmatrix}$
j	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
-j	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
k	$\begin{pmatrix} \beta & -\alpha \\ -\alpha & -\beta \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\sqrt{2}i \\ -\sqrt{2}i & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 & -\omega \\ -\omega & -\omega^2 \end{pmatrix}$
-k	$\begin{pmatrix} -\beta & \alpha \\ \alpha & \beta \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{2}i \\ \sqrt{2}i & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -\omega^2 & \omega \\ \omega & \omega^2 \end{pmatrix}$

realizing

$$\mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C})$$

### 37.4.1.1 Euler identity

cf. Lagrange identity<sup>[37.3.3.1]</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} & \det(a + bi + cj + dk) \\ &= \det \left[ a \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} + c \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + d \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \\ &= \det \begin{pmatrix} a + bi & -c - di \\ c - di & a - bi \end{pmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a + bi & -c - di \\ c - di & a - bi \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (a^2 + b^2) + (c^2 + d^2) = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\det(a + bi + cj + dk) = \det \begin{pmatrix} a + bi & -c - di \\ c - di & a - bi \end{pmatrix} = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \det [(q_{10} + q_{11}\mathbf{i} + q_{12}\mathbf{j} + q_{13}\mathbf{k})(q_{20} + q_{21}\mathbf{i} + q_{22}\mathbf{j} + q_{23}\mathbf{k})] = \det [(a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k})(\alpha + \beta\mathbf{i} + \gamma\mathbf{j} + \delta\mathbf{k})] \\
&= \det \left\{ \left[ q_{10} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + q_{11} \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} + q_{12} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + q_{13} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right. \\
&\quad \left. \left[ q_{20} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + q_{21} \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} + q_{22} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + q_{23} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\} \\
&= \det \left\{ \left[ a \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} + c \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + d \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right. \\
&\quad \left. \left[ \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \beta \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} + \gamma \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \delta \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\} \\
&= \det \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a + bi & -c - di \\ c - di & a - bi \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha + \beta i & -\gamma - \delta i \\ \gamma - \delta i & \alpha - \beta i \end{pmatrix} \right\} \\
&= \det \begin{pmatrix} a + bi & -c - di \\ c - di & a - bi \end{pmatrix} \det \begin{pmatrix} \alpha + \beta i & -\gamma - \delta i \\ \gamma - \delta i & \alpha - \beta i \end{pmatrix} = (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2)(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 + \delta^2) \\
&= \det \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} [a + bi][\alpha + \beta i] - [c + di][\gamma - \delta i] & [a + bi][- \gamma - \delta i] - [c + di][\alpha - \beta i] \\ [c - di][\alpha + \beta i] + [a - bi][\gamma - \delta i] & [c - di][- \gamma - \delta i] + [a - bi][\alpha - \beta i] \end{pmatrix} \right\} \\
&= \det \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} (a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta) + i(a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma) & -(a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta) - i(a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha) \\ (a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta) - i(a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha) & (a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta) - i(a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma) \end{pmatrix} \right\} \\
&= \det \{(a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta) + (a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma)\mathbf{i} + (a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta)\mathbf{j} + (a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha)\mathbf{k}\} \\
&= (a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta)^2 + (a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma)^2 + (a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta)^2 + (a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha)^2 \\
&= (q_{10}q_{20} - q_{11}q_{21} - q_{12}q_{22} - q_{13}q_{23})^2 + (q_{10}q_{21} + q_{11}q_{20} + q_{12}q_{23} - q_{13}q_{22})^2 \\
&\quad + (q_{10}q_{22} - q_{11}q_{23} + q_{12}q_{20} + q_{13}q_{21})^2 + (q_{10}q_{23} + q_{11}q_{22} - q_{12}q_{21} + q_{13}q_{20})^2 \\
&\quad (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2)(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 + \delta^2) \\
&\quad = (a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta)^2 + (a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma)^2 \\
&\quad \quad + (a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta)^2 + (a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha)^2
\end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 37.2.** For any two integers greater than zero, their multiplication can be the summation of squared four integers greater than zero.

$$\forall \langle m_1, m_2 \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^2, \exists \langle k_1, k_2, k_3, k_4 \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 [m_1 m_2 = k_1^2 + k_2^2 + k_3^2 + k_4^2]$$

Proof:

$$\text{Let } \begin{cases} m_1 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 & \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 \\ m_2 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 + \delta^2 & \langle \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 \end{cases} \xrightarrow{\text{closure property}} \begin{pmatrix} m_1 \\ m_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \\ \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 + \delta^2 \end{pmatrix} \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^2,$$

$$\begin{aligned}
m_1 m_2 &= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2) (\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2 + \delta^2) \\
&\stackrel{\text{Euler identity}}{=} (a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta)^2 + (a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma)^2 \\
&\quad + (a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta)^2 + (a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha)^2 \\
&= |a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta|^2 \\
&\quad + |a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma|^2 \\
&\quad + |a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta|^2 \\
&\quad + |a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha|^2 \\
&= k_1^2 + k_2^2 + k_3^2 + k_4^2, \quad \begin{pmatrix} k_1 \\ k_2 \\ k_3 \\ k_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} |a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta| \\ |a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma| \\ |a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta| \\ |a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha| \end{pmatrix} \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 \\
&\therefore \begin{cases} \langle a, b, c, d \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 \\ \langle \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \rangle \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4 \end{cases} \\
&\xrightarrow{\text{closure property}} \begin{pmatrix} |a\alpha - b\beta - c\gamma - d\delta| \\ |a\beta + b\alpha + c\delta - d\gamma| \\ |a\gamma - b\delta + c\alpha + d\beta| \\ |a\delta + b\gamma - c\beta + d\alpha| \end{pmatrix} \in (\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\})^4
\end{aligned}$$

□

### 37.4.2 $\mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{4 \times 4}(\mathbb{R})$

[https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear\\_representation\\_theory\\_of\\_quaternion\\_group#Four-dimensional\\_irreducible\\_representation\\_over\\_a\\_non-splitting\\_field](https://groupprops.subwiki.org/wiki/Linear_representation_theory_of_quaternion_group#Four-dimensional_irreducible_representation_over_a_non-splitting_field)

# **Chapter 38**

## **tensor**

### **38.1 Einstein summation convention**

#### **38.1.1 dummy index**

#### **38.1.2 free index**



# references

1. Xie, Y. *Bookdown: Authoring Books and Technical Documents with r Markdown*. (2023).
2. Xie, Y. *Dynamic Documents with R and Knitr*. (Chapman; Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, Florida, 2015).
3. Bookdown books on the web: Downloading and converting to pdf - R Markdown. *Posit Community* (2019).
4. ccjou. 二次型與正定矩陣. (2009).
5. Campbell, D. T. & Stanley, J. *Experimental and Quasi-Experimental Designs for Research*. (Cengage Learning, Belomt, CA, 1963).
6. ccjou. 多變量常態分布. (2014).
7. Hu, F.-C. *Statistical Design and Analysis of Biomedical Research*. (International-Harvard (I-H) Statistical Consulting Company, Taipei, Taiwan, 2022).
8. Milliken, G. A. & Johnson, D. E. *Analysis of Messy Data Volume 1: Designed Experiments, Second Edition*. (Chapman; Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, Fla., 2004).
9. Buchanan, C. D. et al. Sorghum bicolor's Transcriptome Response to Dehydration, High Salinity and ABA. *Plant Molecular Biology* **58**, 699–720 (2005).
10. 張翔. & 廖崇智. 提綱挈領學統計. (大碩教育, 2021).
11. Casler, M. D., Vermerris, W. & Dixon, R. A. Replication Concepts for Bioenergy Research Experiments. *BioEnergy Research* **8**, 1–16 (2015).